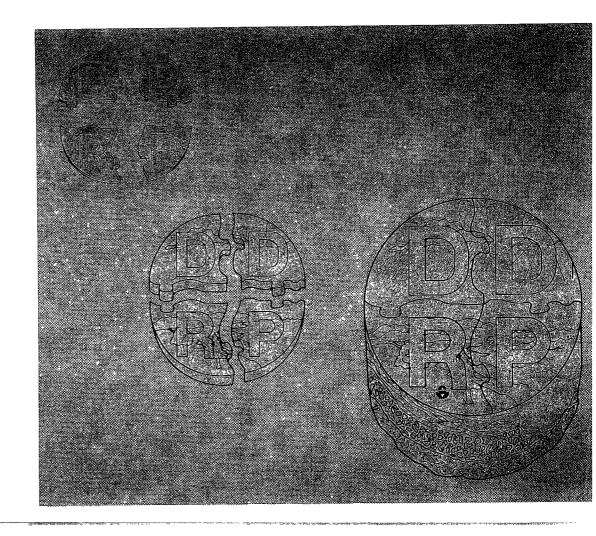
EPA/600/4-87/030a September 1987

**ŞEPA** 

Research and Development

# Direct/Delayed Response Project: Field Operations and Quality Assurance Report for Soil Sampling and Preparation in the Northeastern United States

Volume I. Sampling





# Direct/Delayed Response Project: Field Operations and Quality Assurance Report for Soil Sampling and Preparation in the Northeastern United States Volume I: Sampling

by

D.S. Coffey

M.L. Papp, J.K. Bartz, and R.D. Van Remortel

J.J. Lee and D.A. Lammers

and

M.G. Johnson and G.R. Holdren

A Contribution to the National Acid Precipitation Assessment Program



U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Office of Research and Development Washington, DC 20460

Environmental Research Laboratory - Corvallis, OR 97333 Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory - Las Vegas, NV 89193

#### Notice

The information in this document has been funded wholly or in part by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency under contract number 68-03-3249 to Lockheed Engineering and Sciences Company, and under contract number 68-03-3246 to Northrop Services, Inc. It has been subject to the Agency's peer and administrative review, and it has been approved for publication as an EPA document.

Mention of trade names or commercial products does not constitute endorsement or recommendation for use.

This document is one volume of a set which fully describes the Direct/Delayed Response Project, Northeast and Southeast soil surveys. The complete document set includes the major data reports, quality assurance plans, analytical methods manuals, field operations reports, and quality assurance reports. Similar sets are being produced for each Aquatic Effects Research Program component project. Colored covers, artwork, and the use of the project name in the document title serve to identify each companion document. The proper citation of this document remains:

Coffey, D. S<sup>1</sup>., M. L. Papp<sup>2</sup>, J. K. Bartz<sup>2</sup>, R. D. Van Remortel<sup>2</sup>, J. J. Lee<sup>3</sup>, D. A. Lammer<sup>3</sup>, M. G. Johnson<sup>4</sup>, and G. R. Holdren<sup>4</sup>. 1987. *Direct/Delayed Response Project: Field Operations and* Quality Assurance Report for Soil Sampling and Preparation in the Northeastern United States, Sampling. EPA/600/4-87/030a. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory, Las Vegas, Nevada. 146 pp.

Northrop Services, Inc.; Corvallis, Oregon 97333

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Tetra Tech, Inc.; Bellevue, Washington 98005 <sup>2</sup>Lockheed Engineering and Sciences Company; Las Vegas, Nevada 89119 <sup>3</sup>U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory; Corvallis, Oregon 97333

#### Abstract

The Direct/Delayed Response Project is designed to address the concern over potential acidification of surface waters by atmospheric deposition within the United States. The Northeastern soil survey was conducted during the autumn of 1985 as a synoptic physical and chemical survey to characterize watersheds located in a region of the United States believed to be susceptible to the effects of acidic deposition. This document describes the planning activities and summarizes field operations and quality assurance/quality control activities associated with soil sampling activities of the Northeastern soil survey.

Prior to the regional soil survey, a pilot study was conducted to develop and test site location protocols and field sampling procedures and to assess logistical constraints associated with implementing these procedures. Twenty-five soil series and 51 pedons were sampled in New York, Maine, and Virginia. From this study, a sampling site selection algorithm was developed to select soil and vegetation classes for sampling activities in the Northeastern region. A total of 306 pedons were described and sampled in the Northeastern soil survey.

In general, soil sampling activities during the survey proceeded as planned. Pertinent observations, problems, and concerns are discussed in this report and recommendations are made for modification and improvements. These recommendations may be valuable to planners of similar projects.

This report was submitted in fulfillment of contract number 68-03-3249 by Lockheed Engineering and Sciences Company under the sponsorship of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. This report covers a period from July 1985 to December 1986, and work was completed as of September 1987.

# Contents

| Section  | Page |
|--|------|
| Abstract   | ii   |
| Notice   |      |
| Figures  |      |
| Tables   |      |
|  |      |
| List of Abbreviations  |      |
| Acknowledgments  | x    |
| 1. Introduction  | 1    |
| The second of th |      |
| Background   | 1    |
| Soil and Vigoration Surveys  | 2    |
| Soil and Vegetation Surveys  |      |
| Quality Assurance/Quality Control  | 2    |
| Field Operations Documentation   | 2    |
| The Northeastern Soil Survey   | 2    |
| Mapping of Soils and Vegetation  | 2    |
| Survey of the Surface Water  | 4    |
| Pilot Soil Survey  | . 4  |
| Watershed Selection for the Soil Survey  | 4    |
|  |      |
| Soil Mapping and Development Sampling Classes  | 4    |
| Computer Program for Selection of Sampling Sites   | 5    |
| Field Selection of Sampling Locations  | 5    |
| Coordination of Sampling Activities  | 6    |
| Exit Meeting   | 6    |
| 2. Field Operations  | 7    |
| 2. Field Operations  | 7    |
| Preparation for Field Operations   | 7    |
| Propagation I oboratorios  | 7    |
| Preparation Laboratories   | /    |
| Procurement of Equipment and Supplies  | 7    |
| Protocol Development   | 7    |
| Sampling Crew Training   | 8    |
| Crew Assignment for Special Interest Watershed Sampling  | 8    |
| Changes to Sampling Protocols  | 8    |
| Soil Sampling  | 9    |
| Site Selection   | 9    |
| Site Restrictions  | 10   |
|  |      |
| Sampling Difficulties Relating to Soil Characteristics   | 12   |
| Equipment for Pedon Description and Sampling   | 13   |
| Sample Sieving Protocol  | 16   |
| Sample Labeling Discrepancies  | 16   |
| Clod Sampling for Determination of Bulk Density  | 16   |
| Field Data Forms and Codes for Pedon and Site Descriptions   |      |
| Entry of Field Data by the Sampling Crews  | 1Ω   |
| Sample Transport and Storage   | 10   |
| Sample Transport and Storage   | 10   |
| Preparation Laboratory Interactions and Responses  | 19   |

# Contents (continued)

| Se                         | ection   | Page   |
|----------------------------|--|--|
| 3.                         | Quality Assurance Program  | . 20   |
|                            | Data Quality Objectives Sampling Objectives Fulfillment of Objectives Quality Assurance Evaluations and Audits Evaluations by the Regional Correlator/Coordinator Evaluations by the Soil Conservation Service State Staff Audits by Quality Assurance Staff Review of Log Books Review of Sampling Log Books Review of Sample Receipt Log Books Collection of Field Duplicates Review of Profile Descriptions Paired Pedon Descriptions Independent Pedon Descriptions Data Entry and Management Soil Mapping Data Files Soil Sampling Data Files | . 20<br>. 22<br>23<br>24<br>24<br>25<br>25<br>26<br>33<br>35<br>35<br>37<br>39<br>40 |
| 4.                         | Recommendations and Conclusions  | . 41   |
|                            | Recommendations Site Selection Sampling Difficulties Equipment Sample Sieving Clod Sampling for Determination of Bulk Density Field Data Forms and Codes Regional Correlator/Coordinator Evaluations Soil Conservation Service State Staff Evaluations Quality Assurance Staff Audits Sampling Log Books Sample Receipt Log Books Independent Pedon Descriptions Conclusions   | . 41<br>. 41<br>. 42<br>. 42<br>. 42<br>. 42<br>. 43<br>. 43<br>. 43<br>. 44         |
| Re                         | eferences  | 45   |
| Аţ                         | ppendices  |  |
| A.<br>B.<br>C.<br>D.<br>E. | Response Project Soil Survey Changes to Protocols Letter to Landowner Sampling Class Information   | . 117<br>. 124<br>. 126  |

# Figures

| Num | ber  | Page |
|-----|--|------|
| 1   | Design for the Direct/Delayed Response Project Soil Survey | . 3  |
| 2   | Recommended title page for sampling log books              | . 27 |
| 3   | Recommended index page for sampling log books              | . 28 |
| 4   | Recommended format for site location notes                 | . 29 |
| 5   | Recommended format for sampling notes                      | . 30 |
| 6   | Recommended format for slide key                           | . 32 |
| 7   | Recommended format for sample receipt log books            | . 34 |

# Tables

| Num | nber /   | Page |
|-----|--|------|
| 1   | Summary of Routine Soil Sampling during 1985   | . 9  |
| 2   | Pedons Disqualified from Sampling  | . 11 |
| 3   | Pedons Sampled under a Vegetation Class Different from that Specified                          | . 11 |
| 4   | Pedons with Possible Contamination or Other Characteristics that may Affect Analytical Results | . 14 |
| 5   | Summary of On-Site Evaluations and Audits  | . 23 |
| 6   | Summary of the Qualitative Differences Between Paired Pedons                                   | . 36 |
| 7   | Summary of Independent Pedon Descriptions Evaluated  | . 38 |

### List of Abbreviations

DDRP Direct/Delayed Response Project

DQO Data quality objective ELS Eastern Lake Survey

**EMSL-LV** Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory-Las Vegas, Nevada

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency EPA

**ERL-C** Environmental Research Laboratory-Corvallis, Oregon

FD Field duplicate

**GIS** Geographic Information System **NADSS** National Acid Deposition Soil Survey

NAPAP National Acid Precipitation Assessment Program

National Cooperative Soil Survey National Surface Water Survey NCSS **NSWS** Oak Ridge National Laboratory ORNL

QA

Quality assurance Quality Assurance Management Staff Quality control **QAMS** 

QC

**RCC** Regional Correlator/Coordinator Society of American Foresters SAF SCS Soil Conservation Service

## **Acknowledgments**

Critical reviews by the following individuals are gratefully acknowledged: D. E. Corrigan, Ontario Ministry of the Environment, Toronto, Ontario, Canada; J. S. Lohse, Illinois Department of Agriculture, Bureau of Farmland Protection, Springfield, Illinois; and C. J. Palmer, Environmental Research Center, University of Nevada-Las Vegas, Las Vegas, Nevada.

A draft of this report was prepared by Tetra Tech, Inc., under the direction of D. S. Coffey, for Northrop Services, Inc. in partial fulfillment of Contract No. 450084356. R. Barrick of Tetra Tech, Inc. was the project manager. The draft was edited by W. J. Erckmann.

Information or review was provided by R. E. Cameron, K. A. Cappo, and Sevda Drousé, Lockheed Engineering and Sciences Company, Las Vegas, Nevada; R. D. Schonbrod, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory, Las Vegas, Nevada; J. Warner, Naples, Florida; L. Liegel, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Oregon; M. Morrison and J. Sprenger, Northrop Services, Inc, Corvallis, Oregon; and the following staff of the U.S. Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service: R. Babcock (Maine), D. Grice and S. Hundley (Massachusetts), G. Lipscomb (Pennsylvania), F. Gilbert (New York), K. Wheeler (New York), E. Sautter (Connecticut), and S. Pilgrim (New Hampshire).

The assistance of L. A. Stanley, Lockheed Engineering and Sciences Company, Las Vegas, Nevada, in preparing the figures for publication is appreciated.

Finally, the assistance of the Technical Monitor, L. J. Blume, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring System Laboratory, Las Vegas, Nevada is gratefully acknowledged.

#### Section 1

#### Introduction

## Background

The Direct/Delayed Response Project (DDRP) is an integral part of the acidic deposition research program of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). The EPA program is conducted under the federally mandated National Acid Precipitation Assessment Program (NAPAP) which addresses the concern over potential acidification of surface waters by atmospheric deposition within the United States. DDRP is administered by the EPA Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Oregon (ERL-C).

The overall purpose of DDRP is to characacterize geographic regions of the United States by predicting the long-term response of watersheds and surface waters to acidic deposition. Two regions were selected for study because of their apparent history of sensitivity to acidic deposition: the Northeastern region of the United States and the southwestern portion of the Blue Ridge Province. Based on the results of previous surface water surveys conducted by EPA and on data from DDRP, each watershed system in these two regions will be assigned one of the following three classifications. Each category is defined according to the time scale in which the system is assumed to reach steadystate conditions at current levels of acidic deposition:

- Direct Response Watersheds with surface waters that are either presently acidic (alkalinity is less than 0) or will become acidic within a few (3 to 4) mean water residence times (less than 10 years).
- Delayed Response Watersheds in which surface waters will become

- acidic after a period of from a few mean water residence times to several decades (within 10 to 100 years).
- Capacity Protected Watersheds in which surface waters will not become acidic for centuries to millennia.

Two specific objectives of the DDRP regional soil surveys are as follows:

- To characterize the variability of the physical, chemical, and mineralogical properties of soils sampled in watersheds in the regions of concern.
- To define other descriptive watershed characteristics, e.g., vegetation type and depth to bedrock, of the regions of concern.

Data from the DDRP research will be collected and analyzed at three levels:

- Level I System description and statistical analysis.
- Level II Single factor response-time estimates.
- Level III Dynamic systems modeling.

Field and laboratory data collected in the aquatic, soil, and vegetation surveys will comprise the system description in Level I. Next, these data will be used in Level II to develop single factor estimates of the response time of watershed properties, e.g., sulfate adsorption capacity, to acidic deposition. Finally, the detailed data from special interest watersheds will be used in Level III to calibrate three dynamic simulation models, MAGIC (Cosby et al., 1984), ILWAS (Chen et al., 1984), and

Trickle-Down (Schnoor et al., 1984), that predict regional ecosystem response to acidic deposition. The response-time estimates developed in Level II will be used in these calibrated simulation models to predict regional responses to acidic deposition.

#### Soil and Vegetation Surveys

DDRP is comprised of three component survey activities: soil mapping, vegetation mapping, and soil sampling. The soil mapping and vegetation mapping tasks were the responsibility of ERL-C. The soil sampling was conducted as a cooperative effort of two EPA laboratories under the management of the technical director at ERL-C. The soil sampling task leader at ERL-C had overall responsibility for the soil sampling including quality assurance/quality control (QA/QC) for the site selection and profile descriptions. Logistical support and sampling, preparation, and analytical QA/QC support were provided by the EPA **Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory** located in Las Vegas, Nevada (EMSL-LV).

#### Quality Assurance/Quality Control

A QA/QC program was developed to assure the validity of the profile description and sampling efforts of the DDRP Soil Survey. The integrity of the sampling activities affects the ultimate quality of data derived from the physical, chemical, and mineralogical analyses of the samples. The QA/QC program was designed to assess data quality so that potential users of the data may determine if the data meet their project needs.

In addition, the QA/QC program was designed to assure that the data are comparable. To achieve comparability, soils were described and sampled according to documented protocols (see Appendix A), although special interest watersheds were sampled using slightly modified protocols. Laboratory analyses were conducted according to documented protocols (Cappo et al., 1987).

## Field Operations Documentation

This report documents field operations during sampling activities in the Northeastern Soil Survey, and evaluates compliance with the protocols provided to the sampling crews.

Deviations from the protocols are documented, data for profile descriptions are reviewed, and an evaluation is made of the potential effect of these deviations on the validity of the sampling and the integrity of the samples. In addition, this report recommends modifications to the sampling protocols that should be considered for future surveys.

This report was primarily developed from the following sources of information:

- Documents referenced in this report.
- Sampling log books.
- Field data forms.
- Photographic slides of each pedon sampled.
- Audit reports by QA/QC staff.
- Sample receipt log books.
- Project reports to EPA management.
- Interviews of project participants.
- Notes from the meeting held at the close of the sampling and preparation activities.

## The Northeastern Soil Survey

The Northeastern Soil Survey included the states of Maine, New York, New Hampshire, Pennsylvania, Connecticut, Rhode Island, Vermont, and Massachusetts. In New York and Massachusetts, special interest watersheds were sampled as part of this survey. The design of the soil survey is presented schematically in Figure 1.

## Mapping of Soils and Vegetation

Soil mapping and vegetation mapping were conducted in accordance with the protocols described in Lammers et al. (in preparation). Mapping was conducted primarily by Soil Conservation Service (SCS) soil scientists under interagency agreements between EPA and the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA). In some states, SCS subcontracted cooperators at land-grant universities and private

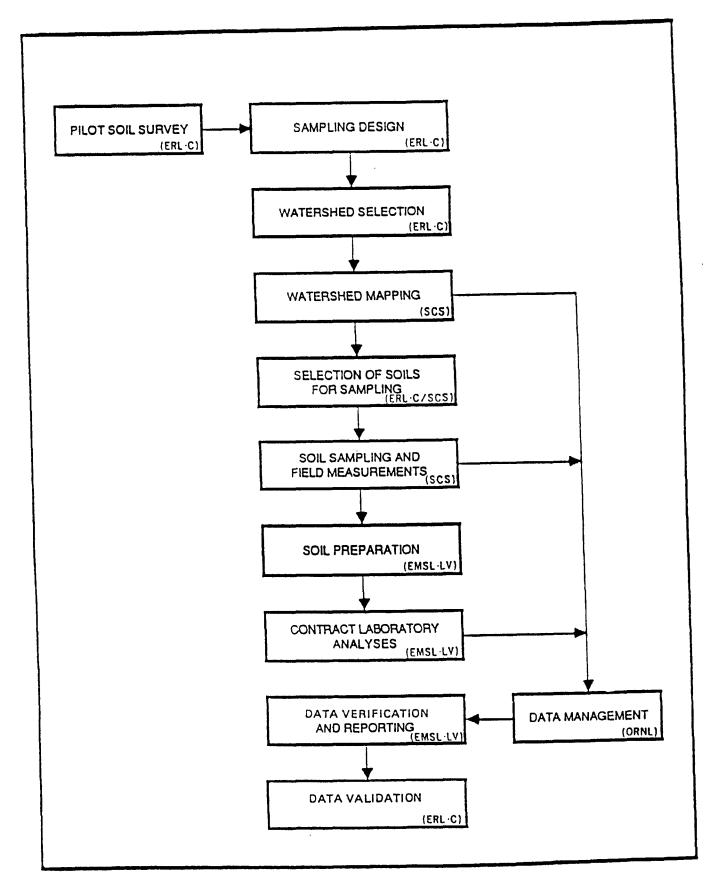


Figure 1. Design for the Direct/Delayed Response Project Soil Survey.

\_\_\_\_\_

consultants, and temporarily hired other individuals for staffing the sampling crews.

### Survey of the Surface Water

The National Surface Water Survey (NSWS) is a NAPAP program designed and implemented by EPA to conduct a chemical survey of lakes and streams located in regions of the Eastern United States believed to be susceptible to the effects of acidic deposition. Phase I of this program included the Eastern Lakes Survey (ELS), conducted in the fall of 1984. Of the 1,763 lakes visited during the survey, 1,612 were sampled. Chemical characterizations were performed on 2,399 samples from these lakes. Sampling was not undertaken if lakes were ice covered or thermally stratified, the specific conductance of the water exceeded 1,500 µS/cm, or landing conditions for the sampling helicopters were hazardous.

#### Pilot Soil Survey

Concurrent with ELS in 1984, a pilot soil survey was conducted in Maine and New York in the northeastern region and in Virginia in the southeastern region. The pilot study provided information for planning and designing the Northeastern Soil Survey. Complete details of the pilot survey are provided in Chapter 3 of the DDRP Action Plan/Implementation Protocol (U.S. EPA, 1985) and in Reuss and Walthall (1987).

# Watershed Selection for the Soil Survey

The 773 watersheds included in the northeastern region of the ELS were used to determine possible watersheds to be sampled in the Northeastern Soil Survey. A stratification model based on alkalinity was used to examine physical and chemical data from the ELS and to set boundaries for the strata. Lakes were grouped into three strata, defining 149 possible low alkalinity watersheds for mapping and Soil Sampling activities for the Northeastern Soil Survey. The watershed selection method is detailed in chapters 2, 3, and 4 of the DDRP Action Plan/Implementation Protocol (U.S. EPA, 1985).

# Soil Mapping and Development Sampling Classes

The objective of the soil mapping was to identify soil types occurring within the watersheds, so that similar soils could be grouped into sampling classes. Mapping for the Northeastern Soil Survey was conducted from April through July, 1985. The protocols used in mapping are detailed in Chapter 7 of the DDRP Action Plan/Implementation Protocol (U.S. EPA, 1985). A separate field operations report discusses mapping activities in the northeastern region (Lammers et al., in preparation).

Initial criteria for the development of the sampling classes were as follows:

- Group similar soils so that the variability within a sampling class is less than the variability between sampling classes.
- Restrict the number of sampling classes that have limited occurrence in the watersheds studies, i.e., that occur only in less than 5 percent of the watersheds.
- Restrict the number of sampling classes having a total mapping area of less than 200 acres, i.e., 83 hectares (ha) or about 0.1 percent of the overall area mapped in the region.

The final step was to identify sampling classes in specific watersheds for sampling. The sampling classes were selected to satisfy the following criteria:

- Characterize all sampling classes at similar levels of precision.
- Include the variation in soil characteristics over the watersheds selected for sampling.
- Include the variation in soil characteristics over the clusters developed from the ELS data.

The definition of sampling classes was accomplished at the soil correlation and sampling class selection workshops at Saranac

Lake, New York, July 9 through 11, 1985, and at Corvallis, Oregon, July 16 through 18, 1985. The procedures developed to satisfy the sampling objectives are presented in the QA plan (Bartz et al., 1987) and are detailed in the Definition of Soil Sampling Classes and Selection of Sampling Sites for the Northeast (U.S. EPA, 1986).

# Computer Program for Selection of Sampling Sites

The algorithm for watershed and sampling site selection was applied using a personal computer programmed to obtain a list of possible sampling classes for each watershed. The subsequent steps were performed manually by ERL-C staff.

A watershed map with soil mapping units delineated by sampling class was used in conjunction with a 1-ha by 1-ha mylar grid overlay. Random coordinates were generated by a computer program, and located on the grid. If the resulting point did not fall within a soil mapping unit containing the sampling class chosen for that watershed, then another random coordinate point was chosen using the program. If the point fell on a mapping unit that was a soil complex, a random procedure was used to ensure that the probability of accepting the point was approximately equal to the proportion of the sampling class within the complex (see Appendix A, Section 2.5.2, Step 4).

This process was repeated until five random points located within mapping units containing the correct sampling class were designated in the watershed. The points were numbered 1 through 5, in the order of selection, and plotted on the base map. In addition, a vegetation class associated with the sampling class was defined for each point. Copies of the resulting maps and lists of the assigned sampling and vegetation classes were then given to the SCS for site selection purposes.

The method for sampling site selection as described above presented problems when applied to sampling classes that occur as a long, narrow component on the landscape. For these sampling classes, fifty or more random coordinates were often generated before five points were located within the area

of the sampling class. Therefore, a second selection method was developed by ERL-C statisticians to reduce the time required to choose five points while satisfying the requirements for a random selection. second method involved the following steps: (1) overlaying the 1-ha by 1-ha mylar dot grid on the watershed map; (2) numbering all points that fell into mapping units contained in the selected sampling class consecutively from 1 to n; (3) defining the appropriate random number window size which was dependent on the number of points in the sampling class delineations; and, (4) selecting sampling sites 1 through 5 using a five-digit random number table.

For cases in which complexes were under consideration for sampling, an additional keep/reject criterion was applied. Usually the final two, or occasionally three, digits were used for the selection process. However, in complexes, using the occurrence of the sampling class within the sampling unit to the nearest 10 percent as an index, the sampling point was incorporated as a selected site only if the occurrence was greater than or equal to the first digit of the random number. Therefore, the point was rejected as a sampling site when the occurrence was less than the random number with 0 representing 10, because only the major soils were sampled.

# Field Selection of Sampling Locations

The sampling crews used the watershed base map and the protocol presented in the field manual (Appendix A) to locate the sampling locations. This system assured a high probability for locating a point within the correct sampling class and vegetation class.

Routine soil sampling conducted by the SCS characterizes soils on the landscape by using descriptive soil series characteristics based on a non-random, highly selective sampling design. The DDRP Soil Survey differs from this routine in that it is based on the random selection of sampling locations within a region of concern. This experimental design, i.e., random sampling of soil pedons, allows derivation of statistically valid inferences concerning watershed responses to acidic deposition. These data can then be applied in the Level III modeling effort.

To fulfill the data requirements for calibration of the acid deposition response models, sampling sites in special interest watersheds were not selected randomly. Instead, the sampling crew was sent to a specified point and instructed to sample a soil that was intended to represent the specific watershed or portion of the watershed from which it was obtained.

# Coordination of Sampling Activities

Weekly conference calls between SCS and EPA staff were used to discuss and resolve matters involving sampling protocols and site location difficulties, as well as to review the status of sampling operations and to identify access difficulties, e.g., the need for a helicopter or pontoon plane to access a watershed. In addition, the conference calls also provided regular communication to ensure that all SCS staff were informed of protocol modifications and issues of concern. Major

issues resulting from these discussions were documented in the DDRP team reports by the soil sampling task leader.

#### Exit Meeting

Following soil sampling activities in the northeastern region, an exit meeting was held January 6 through 7, 1986, in Las Vegas, Nevada. Meeting participants included SCS staff from Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, New York, and Pennsylvania; representatives from the sampling crews; ERL-C and EMSL-LV DDRP staff; representatives from Northrop Services, Inc. (technical and support staff for ERL-C), Lockheed Engineering and Sciences Company, (technical and support staff for EMSL-LV), Oak Ridge National Laboratory (ORNL), and the Northeast National Technical Center; and a representative of the Tennessee SCS state office staff (providing Southern Blue Ridge Province representation).

#### Section 2

## Field Operations

## **Preparation for Field Operations**

EMSL-LV was responsible for contracting preparation laboratories, procuring equipment and supplies, and developing sampling protocols prior to the initiation of soil sampling activities. The approach to these tasks is summarized in the following sections.

#### Preparation Laboratories

Preparation laboratory staff were responsible for storing samples received from the sampling crews, preparing soils for analysis (i.e., drying, sieving, and shipping samples to the analytical laboratories), determining the percentage of rock fragments, testing for the presence of carbonate, and determining the bulk density of clod samples. In addition, preparation laboratory staff initially distributed field equipment and supplies, received requests from the sampling crews for additional equipment and supplies, and inventoried the equipment returned by the sampling crews at the end of the sampling effort.

Four preparation laboratories were contracted by EMSL-LV to provide the services summarized above. The laboratory locations and states assigned to each laboratory are provided below:

Preparation Laboratory State Assignments

University of Massachusetts MA, VT, NH Stockbridge Hall Amherst, Massachusetts

University of Connecticut CT, RI
Plant Science Department
Soil Characterization Laboratory
Storrs, Connecticut

University of Maine
Department of Soil Science
Orono, Maine

Cornell University Department of Agronomy Ithaca, New York NY, PA

ME

# Procurement of Equipment and Supplies

A detailed listing of equipment and supplies is presented in Section 8.0 of Appendix A. Most of the materials were provided by EPA, although SCS personnel used their own equipment and supplies in some cases.

Most equipment and supplies were procured under the direction of EMSL-LV. Cost estimates were obtained from at least three suppliers. The overall cost, shipping charges, and delivery of the purchase within the required time frame were considered prior to the initiation of a support contractor purchase request for each item. For some specialty supplies, e.g., clod storage boxes, a sole source justification was required.

EMSL-LV was responsible for shipping equipment and supplies to the preparation laboratories via air courier, and the preparation laboratory personnel distributed the materials to the sampling crews. Other equipment was supplied directly to SCS personnel by ERL-C.

## **Protocol Development**

A detailed manual was developed to emphasize and modify SCS National Cooperative Soil Survey procedures for accomplishing the objectives of the soil survey. This document includes procedures for sampling, describing, and preparing soils (see Appendix A).

Sampling procedures for the special interest watersheds were modified by ERL-C and provided directly to the sampling crew assigned to special interest watersheds. These modifications were necessary because of the intended use of the data for model testing and calibration. Protocol modifications for site selection of the special interest watersheds resulted in the collection of representative, but not random, samples.

The intensity of horizon sampling was also modified for the special interest watersheds, as follows. Horizons in the pedon normally were subdivided for sampling if they were greater than 20 cm (8 inches) in thickness. In no case should sampling intervals have exceeded 20 cm (8 inches) in thickness, regardless of the perceived uniformity of the horizon or its position within the pedon. Although in some cases it may have been necessary to deviate from these guidelines, sampling crews were encouraged to follow them as carefully as possible, because a primary objective of the special interest watershed study was to intensively sample the pedons for within-profile variations. The ideal sample would have contained all soil materials from the horizon within the pedon, but in actuality this was not a practical measure.

## Sampling Crew Training

EPA personnel involved in the sampling effort, SCS personnel, and others contracted by the SCS participated in a sampling workshop in Orono, Maine, from August 7 through 8, 1985. The purpose of the workshop was to review the sampling protocols, to review the field data forms and codes used for pedon description, and to participate in a field exercise following the specified protocols. Two soils were sampled: a typical Northern forest soil (Spodosol) and a wet, bog soil (Histosol). Sampling crew identification numbers and the preparation laboratory to which each crew was to submit samples were assigned during the workshop. Questions pertaining to protocols, particularly sample labeling, were discussed. Some protocols were revised as a result of this workshop. A revised field sampling manual was prepared to incorporate the appropriate modifications that were discussed at this workshop, and the manual was sent to the sampling crews on September 18, 1985. Sampling was underway at that time.

The New York and Maine sampling crews spent additional days training in the field as a group before sampling was initiated. This allowed the crews within a state to develop consistent methods and to review the protocols, particularly for labeling samples and using the field data form codes.

# Crew Assignment for Special Interest Watershed Sampling

Special interest watersheds in New York (Woods Lake, Clear Pond, and Panther Lake) and Massachusetts (Caldwell Creek) were sampled by the members of the New Hampshire sampling crew (NH01). This crew was assigned the designations NY04 in New York and MA03 in Massachusetts to differentiate it from the routine sampling crews.

#### Changes to Sampling Protocols

Prior to the initiation of sampling, the field manual was reviewed by the sampling crews and SCS state staff. Procedures were field tested during the first few weeks of sampling, and some modifications were suggested. This review subsequently resulted in editorial changes and two major protocol modifications for using the field data forms (DDRP Team Report No. 3, September 20, 1985):

- The field data form required entry of latitude-longitude. There was some confusion whether this referred to the latitude-longitude for the lake on the watershed or to the latitude-longitude of the sampling site. The sampling crews were instructed via the SCS to enter the latitude-longitude of the sampling site.
- For some thick soil horizons, separate samples were obtained from the upper and lower portions. Originally the protocol was interpreted that both samples were to be given the same sample code, and were to be distinguished by an additional code (U or L) on the sample label. This protocol

was clarified such that the sample code was recognized as the identification of a unique sample, i.e., the sample code identified a separate sample rather than a specific horizon. Therefore, each portion of the thick horizon was assigned a different sample code, and the sample code for two samples would appear on different lines of the field data form.

In addition, two minor changes in protocol were adopted (DDRP Team Report No. 1, September 9, 1985):

- Because sampling to a depth of 150 cm was impractical in C horizons composed of dense, compact till, the crews were instructed to sample near the top of the horizon and to verify, e.g., by a soil core, that the horizon was unchanged to 150 cm.
- Original protocol had required photographs of soil profiles to be taken with either a macro or wide-angle lens. This requirement was changed to specify a wide-angle lens only.

As mentioned above, a revised field sampling manual (Appendix A) incorporating the appropriate changes from the sampling workshop (Appendix B) was sent to the sampling crews on September 18, 1985 (DDRP Team Report Number 3, September 20, 1985).

## Soil Sampling

Soil sampling operations cover a wide range of activities including site selection, pit excavation, photographic documentation, pedon description, and soil sampling. Sampling protocols are described in Appendix A.

The following sections discuss problems and concerns associated with the implementation of the required sampling protocols. Recommendations are also presented to modify and improve the protocols for use in future regional soil surveys.

Sampling activities were initiated during the week of August 12, 1985, in Maine; the week of August 19, 1985, in New York; and the week of August 26, 1985, in Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Connecticut, and Pennsylvania (DDRP Team Report No. 1, September 9, 1985). All 306 routine pedons had been sampled by November 15, 1985. This met the target date for completion of sampling. A summary of soil sampling activities is provided in Table 1.

The special interest watersheds were sampled during the fall: from October 26 through November 2, 1985, in New York; and from November 15 through 18, 1985, in Massachusetts.

It should be noted that soil sampling activities were begun during unusually dry conditions. Then, cyclonic activity, accentuated by Hurricane Gloria, resulted in excessive rainfall within a short time period during the week of September 23, 1985. Locally, this caused treefalls and road washouts restricting site access and precluding sampling for several weeks.

#### Site Selection

One of the initial responsibilities of the sampling crew leader was to assess sampling site locations. The watershed maps provided by ERL-C were reviewed to determine the physical accessibility of each site and whether it was located on private or public land.

Table 1. Summary of Routine Soil Sampling during 1985

| States                    | <u>Number</u><br>Designated | of Pedons<br>Sampled | <u>Dates of Samp</u><br>Initial Final |       |  |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|-------|--|
| Connecticut, Rhode Island | 26                          | 23                   | 8/26                                  | 10/29 |  |
| Massachusetts, Vermont    | 58                          | 54                   | 8/26                                  | 10/7  |  |
| Maine                     | 86                          | 83                   | 8/12                                  | 10/30 |  |
| New Hampshire             | 30                          | 30                   | 8/26                                  | 10/8  |  |
| New York                  | 88                          | 85                   | 8/19                                  | 11/1  |  |
| Pennsylvania              | 31                          | 31                   | 8/26                                  | 11/7  |  |
| TOTAL                     | 319                         | 306                  | 8/26                                  | 11/7  |  |

Determined from a review of sampling log books.

On one watershed, sampling sites had to reassigned. In this case, only upperreaches of the South Lake watershed in New York were originally mapped. When sampling site locations were assigned, it was unclear as to whether the whole watershed or only the mapped subcatchment was to be considered for sampling. When the rest of the watershed was mapped, new sampling sites were selected; however, the newly mapped area did not contain any soils of the desired sampling class. Therefore, the newly selected sites were located in the upper reaches of the South Lake watershed as originally assigned (DDRP Team Report No. 5, October 3, 1985).

#### Site Restrictions

#### Physical Inaccessibility--

Sites were defined as physically inaccessible if all alternatives for approaching the area were eliminated or if the site were under water. Most sampling points were physically accessible. Pontoon helicopters and fixedwing aircraft support were available for difficult sites, but could not be used within the wilderness areas of the Adirondacks. If a lake were of sufficient size and presented no discernable obstacles, pontoon planes were landed on the lake. No information was available regarding the use of fixed-wing aircraft for access to specific sites. Helicopters were reserved as a vehicular option for watersheds containing smaller lakes. Helicopters were used for access to the following three watersheds in New York:

- Cheney Pond (watershed identification 1A3-042).
- North Branch Lake (1A2-042).
- South Lake (1A3-065).

There were no identifiable problems associated with this operation.

#### Access Denied--

In some cases sites were not sampled because access was denied by private land-owners. Early in the survey it was suggested that an official letter to the landowners on EPA letterhead (see Appendix C) would be helpful to explain why access was necessary and to assure landowners that the sampling crews were representing the EPA in a national

environmental research program. Subsequently, sampling crew leaders reported that the letter was helpful in gaining access and permission to obtain samples on privately owned land.

In Pennsylvania it was found that many sites were located on private land. Accordingly, Pennsylvania SCS staff determined ownership and requested access for all sites before the initiation of sampling in that state. However, access was often granted for only two or three of the selected starting points for the assigned sampling class on a watershed. This consequently limited the number of potential starting points available for site selection.

In other states, access was requested just before the sampling crews prepared to sample each watershed. Four pedons were eliminated because access was denied for all sites which met the predetermined soil and vegetation criteria (see Table 2).

#### Inappropriate Site Conditions--

Occasionally a pedon was eliminated from the list of selected pedons because of unfavorable conditions observed at the site. These conditions included flooded sites and highly disturbed areas, e.g., parking lots or housing developments built on fill. These locations were considered inappropriate for the DDRP regional characterization of soils (see Table 2).

#### **Vegetation Class Considerations--**

Vegetation classes were determined from data obtained during the watershed mapping. Vegetation classes recorded during this mapping activity were identified using Society of American Foresters (SAF) cover types (Eyre, 1980); however, vegetation classes specified for the soil survey were based on an aggregation of SAF cover types (see Appendix A, Section 2.1). In some cases the cover types selected from the mapping could not be found at the site during sampling. Discrepancies were attributed to the method used to group mapping units into sampling classes, mapping error, or vegetative changes at the site between the time of mapping and sampling. Table 3 provides a list of all identified sites that were sampled under a cover type other

Table 2. Pedons Disqualified from Sampling<sup>a</sup>

| W       | atershed          |       | Sampling |                             |                         |
|---------|-------------------|-------|----------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| ID      | Name              | State | Class    | Reason                      | Pedon Type <sup>b</sup> |
| 1C2-048 | Cranberry Pond    | NY    | I21      | Access denied               | R,P                     |
| 1C2-048 | Cranberry Pond    | NY    | I21      | Access denied               | R                       |
| 1D1-031 | Kings Pond        | MA    | H3       | Seasonal flooding           | R                       |
| 1D1-068 | Little Sandy Pond | MA    | H3       | Access denied               | R,P                     |
| 1D2-049 | Spring Grove Pond | RI    | E6       | Disturbed soil              | R,P                     |
| 1D2-093 | Ashland Reservoir | MA    | I40      | Routine pedon not requested | Р                       |
| 1D3-033 | No name           | CT '  | E6       | Disturbed soil              | R                       |
| 1E1-061 | Little Seavy Lake | ME    | I38      | Access denied               | R                       |
| 1E1-077 | Long Pond         | ME    | S01      | Wrong sampling class        | R                       |
| 1E1-123 | First Pond        | ME    | I38      | Flooded by beaver           | R                       |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>a</sup> Modified from DDRP Team Report No. 8, October 31, 1985.

<sup>b</sup> Pedon type: R = routine, P = paired.

Table 3. Pedons Sampled under a Vegetation Class Different from that Specified

| W       | atershed              |       | Sampling | Vegetation C                  | lass               |
|---------|-----------------------|-------|----------|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| ID      | Name                  | State | Class    | Requested                     | Sampled            |
| 1A3-048 | Grass Pond            | NY    | I2       | Open, wetland                 | Conifer            |
| 1B3-052 | No Name               | NY    | I25      | Open, dry                     | Mixed hardwood     |
| 1C2-050 | Moore's Pond          | MA    | I40      | Mixed<br>(Pine-Hemlock)       | Conifer            |
| 1C2-054 | Lake Wampanoag        | MA    | S01      | Hardwood                      | Mixed              |
| 1C3-063 | Martin Meadow<br>Pond | NH    | 138      | Hardwood<br>mapped as conifer | Hardwood           |
| 1D3-002 | Dyke's Pond           | MA    | E6       | Mixed                         | Open               |
| 1D3-003 | Sandy Pond            | MA    | I41      | Open, Wetland                 | Mixed hardwood     |
| 1E2-038 | Nelson Pond           | ME    | S11      | Hardwood<br>mapping           | Open, logged since |

than the vegetation class originally specified. In some instances, permission to alter the specified vegetation class was obtained from ERL-C or EMSL-LV staff prior to sampling. In other instances, the sampling crews sampled the required sampling class, but noted difficulties in locating the appropriate sampling class beneath the specified vegetation type.

It should be noted that the vegetation at a sampling site might be nominally different in terms of percentage from the required vegetation class and still fit the class. This is because the vegetation mapping units were not pure for a given vegetation class, e.g., a conifer class could contain a mixture of up to a 20 percent stand of hardwoods and still meet the criteria for a conifer mapping unit. Sampling crews were instructed to consider vegetation located in the proximity of the site in order to meet suitable sampling criteria. Comments made at the exit meeting indicated that this assessment was not performed consistently

by all sampling crews, i.e., some crews considered only the vegetation directly above the point to be sampled.

# Effect of Disqualification on the Number of Pedons Sampled for Each Sampling Class--

Of the six sampling classes from which pedons were disqualified (see Table 2), only sampling class I21 appears to be underrepresented with regard to samples with three pedons disqualified and only two pedons sampled. It is likely that not enough samples exist to characterize the variability of this Three pedons each were sampling class. disqualified from sampling classes E6 and H3; however, six pedons were sampled for each sampling class. Two pedons were disqualified from I38, one from I40, and one from S01; the number of pedons sampled for those sampling classes were seven, nine, and seven, respectively.

#### Protocol Adherence--

A problem was identified at the exit meeting that affected sample class determinations because the crews had varying perceptions of what constituted a sampling class. Some decided, erroneously, that sampling classes were restricted to specific soil series. This interpretation would lead to rejection of pedons that met the broad criteria for a sampling class but not the narrow criteria for a series. The correct approach should be emphasized in the protocols for future surveys by providing a specific definition of "sampling class", a flowchart indicating soils included in the sampling class (see Appendix D), and instructions on the use of the flowchart. It should be stated that series criteria are not an overriding factor for selecting a site within the sampling class.

The site selection protocol was adhered to by all sampling crews except MA01. Protocol deviations by MA01 were noted in the sampling log book entries and QA auditor's report. The primary protocol deviation was failure to observe the 20-foot interval requirement along random transects from the originally specified sampling point to an acceptable sampling point. The following are excerpts from the MA01 sampling log book (pp. 16 and 17) and from an audit report, respectively:

"There were two points designated within this watershed for the I40 sampling class. They were both in the same map unit. This map unit has several homes and roads within it and two marsh symbols. There is a limited area suitable for sampling, so I decided to locate the sampling site within a wooded, vacant lot."

"The protocol deviations used by the crew are as follows. The first involved site selection. Protocol was followed-up until pacing the transects at 20-foot intervals. As vegetation was important in the selection, pacing proceeded until the correct vegetation was located."

Additional MA01 logbook entries did not indicate any obvious site selection protocol deviations. The entry corresponding with the audit visit did not detail site selection procedures or

provide evidence of the incorrect site selection protocols observed by the auditor.

Often insufficient information was provided in the log books to determine what site selection procedures were used. Conversely, highly detailed site selection discussions were provided in the sampling log books for some pedons. It appears that the auditor did not discuss these protocol deviations with the MA01 sampling crew or mention the importance of randomized site selection.

# Recommendations for Site Selection--

In Connecticut, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Maine, the SCS state office staff determined the sampling site locations for many pedons. The sampling crews were directed to a flagged location. This procedure enabled the field crew to sample two pedons per day. Sampling crews were also able to label sample bags and fill out a portion of the field data form before arriving at the site. This was not the routine procedure for other states, but it is recommended that this procedure be considered as an option to facilitate sampling.

#### Sampling Difficulties Relating to Soil Characteristics

#### Histosols--

In many instances where the sampling class required that a Histosol be sampled, inherent difficulties in description and sampling were encountered. In these wet organic soils, excavating a pedon for description and sampling was not possible. Therefore, samples were obtained using an auger or posthole digger, and placed on plastic sheets for description.

In one instance, the sampling log book stated that the sampling crew had to remove the organic borings by hand because the material would not remain in the auger. The primary concern in sampling these soils is the possibility of contaminating subsurface samples, because the deeper horizons must necessarily be recovered through the surface horizons. Additional difficulties can occur in reconstructing the soil profile and determining

accurate horizon designations and boundaries. Variability in horizon thickness further complicates the collection of discrete, uncontaminated samples.

#### Wet or Saturated Mineral Soils--

A number of pedons were sampled at locations that were extremely wet or subject to a high water table. These sites included pedons with water seepage that advanced into the bottom of the pit, as well as those with partial or complete saturation of the profile.

A number of measures were implemented for sampling wet soils in order to reduce the likelihood of sample contamination. As discussed in the previous section, boring was one method used to collect wet samples. In less extreme situations, water could be removed from the bottom of the pit by hand bailing or by the use of mechanical and hand pumps. In addition, sampling was initiated at the bottom of the pit and progressed upward in an effort to avoid sample contamination as water rose in the pit. From an assessment of log book comments, all crews seemed cognizant of the need to prevent sample contamination.

The protocols for sampling saturated soils were discussed at the exit meeting. It was agreed that, whenever possible, ground-water should be removed from soil pits before sampling. When no other sampling method is feasible, a bucket auger or post-hole digger can be used to obtain satisfactory soil samples. In future surveys, the use of bucket augers or post-hole diggers should be documented on the field data form and in the log book.

It was recommended that EMSL-LV provide hand pumps to the sampling crews for future surveys. In addition, it was suggested that future field sampling manuals include the following recommendations for draining wet soil pits:

- Dig a sump hole in a corner of the pit away from the face to be described.
   Bail or pump water from the sump hole as necessary.
- Dig sump holes upstream of the groundwater flow, if the direction can

be determined, to intercept or divert the groundwater flow.

 In level areas, dig a number of sump holes around the pit to temporarily intercept the groundwater flow.

It is possible that none of the above suggestions will work in situations where the soil materials are coarse-textured and lateral groundwater movement is rapid. One soil scientist participating in the soil survey stated that collecting uncontaminated samples from high water table soils is an impossible task given the use of standard field sampling equipment such as that employed in this project.

Later during a conference call on December 20, 1985, ERL-C and EMSL-LV staffs agreed that an effort would be made to determine which pedons were sampled using bucket augers or post-hole diggers. In the data base, these pedons would be tagged with a data qualifier "W" to identify samples that may have been contaminated because of the sampling method. Those suspect samples are listed in Table 4, although there may be others that were not identified in the log books or on the field data forms. Samples that may have been contaminated because of other conditions observed during sampling are also listed in Table 4.

#### Other Problem Soils--

In some cases, soil pits could not be excavated to the required 1.5 m depth. Large rock fragments or dense substrata were often the limiting factor rather than lithic or paralithic bedrock contacts. These situations were evaluated by the sampling crew leader, who determined the feasibility of further manual excavation. The protocols required that all onsite decisions regarding excavation depths be documented on the field data form.

# Equipment for Pedon Description and Sampling

The success of pedon excavation and description, photographic documentation, clod sampling, sample storage and transportation, and other field activities was dependent on

Table 4. Pedons with Possible Contamination or Other Characteristics that may Affect Analytical Results

| Wat                  | tershed                       |               | Sampling |  |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|----------|--|
| ID                   | Name                          | State         | Class    | Reason for Concern                                       |
| 1A1-012              | Whitney Lake                  | New York      | S05      | C horizon saturated                                      |
| 1A1-020              | Fourth/Bisby Lake             | New York      | НЗ       | Limed  |
| 1A1-064              | Mt. Arab Lake                 | New York      | E02      | Bucket auger used for 3C                                 |
| 1A2-048              | No Name                       | New York      | H2       | Auger sample   |
| 1A3-043              | Unknown                       | New York      | E02      | Wet, pH higher than expected                             |
| 1B1-043              | Penn Lake                     | Pennsylvania  | 130      | Strip mine   |
| 1B1-043              | Penn Lake                     | Pennsylvania  | E6       | Strip mine   |
| 1B3-021              | Lil Butler                    | Pennsylvania  | 133      | Manure, fertilizer                                       |
| 1B3-032              | Wixon Pond                    | New York      | H2       | Wet, required laying out to describe                     |
| 1B3-041 <sup>#</sup> | East Stroudsburg<br>Reservoir | Pennsylvania  | H2       | Bucket auger and post-hole digger used                   |
| 1B3-051              | Barret Pond                   | New York      | H2       | Wet, required laying out to describe                     |
| 1B3-052              | No Name                       | New York      | E6       | Parking lot, fill  |
| 1B3-053              | No Name                       | Pennsylvania  | 133      | Wet  |
| 1B3-056              | Riga Lake                     | Connecticut   | H2       | Wet, interhorizon contamination, auger and spade<br>used |
| 1B3-062 <sup>a</sup> | Bassett                       | Pennsylvania  | I25      | Hayfield, limed  |
| 1C1-009              | Upper Baker Pond              | New Hampshire | I37      | Sampled Cg2 with bucket auger                            |
| 1C2-021ª             | Clear Pond                    | Maine         | S12      | Auger sample, standing water at 28 cm                    |
| 1C2-057              | Babbidge Reservoir            | New Hampshire | E02      | Sampled Cg2 with bucket auger                            |
| 1C2-057              |                               | New Hampshire | IO1      | Bucket auger used for lower C (113 to 150 cm)            |
| 1C2-057 <sup>a</sup> | Babbidge Reservoir            | New Hampshire | I01      | Sampled Cg and Cg2 with bucket auger                     |
| 1C2-062              | Pemigewasset                  | New Hampshire | I37      | Sampled Cg3 and Cg4 with bucket auger                    |
| 1C2-062              | Pemigewasset                  | New Hampshire | 138      | Sampled Bg and 2Crg with bucket auger                    |
| 1C3-031              | Sadawaga Lake                 | Vermont       | H3       | Quaking mat, hand-collected Histosol                     |
| 1D1-054              | Upper Mill Pond               | Massachusetts | Н3       | Post-hole digger from 38 to 150 cm                       |
| 1D2-093              | Ashland Reservoir             | Massachusetts | I10      | Manure, fertilizer                                       |
| 1D3-020              | Little Alum Pond              | Massachusetts | 19       | Auger used from 125 to 150 cm                            |
| 1E1-082              | Stevens Pond                  | Maine         | S11      | Field burned, treated with herbicide (Velpar)            |
| 1E2-002              | No Name                       | Maine         | I46      | Auger used from 108 to 135 cm                            |
| 1E2-063              | Kaler's Pond                  | Maine         | E2       | Sampled IICg and IIC with bucket auger                   |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>a</sup> Paired pedon.

the equipment supplied to the trained sampling crews. The immediate availability of equipment to the sampling crews was an important factor. The utility, reliability, durability, and efficiency of the equipment had a major effect on the quality of the sampling. Recommendations of the sampling crews to modify, eliminate, or procure equipment for use in future surveys are discussed below.

#### Plastic Sample Bags--

Observations were made early in the survey regarding the use of plastic sample bags. The sampling crews noted that when heavy, wet samples were obtained, double-bagging was necessary to avoid bag breakage during transport. Dry samples usually did not require the same precautions and no more than one plastic bag was needed. Some crews routinely double-bagged all samples as a precautionary measure.

#### Staplers--

Small, hand-held staplers that use standard staples were supplied for securing the plastic bags. Several sampling crews commented that heavy duty staplers with large staples would be more durable in the field, although some crews preferred the small staplers because they were light weight and more convenient for carrying to remote sampling sites. It is recommended that both types of staplers be made available to the sampling crews for future surveys, and then crews can use the type they prefer.

#### Sharpshooter Shovels--

A number of sampling crews noted that sharpshooter shovels, also known as tile spades, had a short life span when subjected to frequent use. The primary difficulty was that these shovels broke or dented easily.

However, they did appear to be especially effective in pit excavation. For that reason, sampling crews recommended that a number of backup sharpshooters be made available to sampling crews when replacement was necessary.

#### Styrofoam Coolers--

Samples were typically stored in local cold storage facilities at the end of the day or transported directly to the preparation laboratory. Styrofoam coolers containing gel-pacs were used only when samples could not be placed in cold storage within 24 hours after collection, or when samples could not be transported directly to the preparation laboratories. For the New York crews, sufficient coolers were not always available. To meet this deficiency, 40-gallon plastic garbage pails were substituted when necessary.

#### Thermometers--

Sampling crews were supplied with thermometers to monitor the temperature in the styrofoam coolers during sample transport and storage. Temperature data were desired to assess the efficiency of the gel-pac cooling system. It was found that the styrofoam coolers in conjunction with the gel-pacs maintained temperatures at or below ambient soil conditions. However, when soils were sampled on very cold days, some crews reported that the samples were colder than the partially thawed gel-pacs, and the samples were responsible for maintaining the temperature in the styrofoam coolers.

Measurement of the internal temperature of the coolers is not recommended for future surveys, provided sample delivery within 24 hours is guaranteed and the coolers are protected from direct sunlight at all times.

#### Gel-Pacs--

Many gel-pacs initially supplied by EMSL-LV had been used previously in ELS, and leaked electrolyte solution upon thawing. Generally, samples were thought to be protected, because they were contained in plastic bags within cloth sample bags. However, many samples contained angular rock fragments that were capable of puncturing the plastic bags.

Because of the unreliability of the gelpacs, sampling crews double-bagged the gelpacs in plastic zip-lock bags to limit the possibility of sample contamination. As the survey progressed, gel-pacs subject to leakage were replaced.

The sampling log books did not identify any samples that had been contaminated by gel-pac leakage. The sample receipt log books kept at the preparation laboratories did not note any problems related to gel-pac leakage.

#### Photographic Equipment--

Sampling crews were asked to provide 35-mm cameras for photographic documentation. Fast (ASA 400) slide film was recommended for photography in the understory when a flash was not used; however, sampling crews were encouraged to evaluate the quality of the initial slides and subsequently to change film speed or film type, if necessary.

At the exit meeting, the following recommendations were given to improve the quality of the photographic documentation for future surveys.

- EMSL-LV should supply a compact, 35-mm camera with a built-in flash and a wide-angle lens to each sampling crew.
- ASA 400 film should be used, regardless of light conditions.
- A standard metric scale should be used in all pedon and understory photographs.
- A standard gray card for pedon and understory identification should be supplied to all sampling crews. The crew will be responsible for the black lettering.
- Pedon faces that are partially shaded should be photographed when fully shaded to provide uniformly lighted exposures.
- Horizon boundaries should be marked with golf tees to make them more visible in the photographs.

#### Hand Pumps--

Hand pumps were not supplied by EPA for this survey; however, the experiences with sampling wet soils indicate that hand pumps should be supplied in the future. Sampling crews that used hand pumps indicated that some models deteriorated quickly because of suspended sand and silt in the water being pumped from the soil pit. An appropriate model would be one, e.g., the Beckman Gusher, that does not wear rapidly in the field environment.

#### Sample Sieving Protocol

In general, sieving at the sampling site to remove rock fragments greater than 20 mm in diameter was implemented successfully. However, two preparation laboratories indicated that samples containing rock fragments greater than 20 mm were processed at the laboratories on several occasions. The sample bags were not labeled with this information, and the information was not entered in the sample receipt log book at the time samples were submitted to the preparation laboratories.

This deviation from protocol has several implications. First, for those samples, the sampling crew's estimate of the volume of rock fragments is suspect. Secondly, it must be presumed that the sampling crew collected a sufficiently large sample so that the amount of fine earth material is representative of the pedon. Finally, the corresponding determination of percentage rock fragments in the 2- to 20-mm fraction, which is performed at the preparation laboratory, is suspect.

Sampling crew NY03 did not sieve samples from the four pedons because the sieve was not taken to the field when those samples were collected. The sampling log book noted that the following samples had not been sieved:

| Waters            | shed                 |                           |
|-------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| Identification    | Name                 | Sampling Class            |
| IB3-052           | No Name              | E6 (sampled in duplicate) |
| IB3-052<br>AI-003 | No Name<br>Nawk Pond | <b>I25</b><br>S05         |

This protocol deviation was not recorded in the sampling log books or on the field data forms of other crews, although another preparation laboratory received some unsieved samples. The personnel at that preparation laboratory commented that unsieved samples could not be identified at the time samples were submitted by the sampling crew. While the unsieved samples were within the plastic bags, large rock fragments were not visible.

For future surveys, the protocols should be written to emphasize that the sampling crew is responsible for noting any unusual sample conditions or protocol deviations in the sampling log book, on the field data form, directly on the sample bags, and in the sample receipt log book. The preparation laboratory should note unsieved samples in the sample processing log book.

#### Sample Labeling Discrepancies

During the initial days of sampling, a number of samples were mislabeled by the crews. Normally, preparation laboratory personnel were able to identify and correct mislabeled samples at the time the sample code and horizon interval (Label A) data were verified against the corresponding field data form. It was very important that each sampling crew submit the field data forms to the preparation laboratory with the samples, but this was not done consistently. Often the preparation laboratories waited several weeks before receiving the field data forms.

After these initial difficulties were resolved, the frequency of labeling errors decreased with time. Sample labeling errors did not result in any serious identification problems for the preparation laboratory personnel, therefore, no samples will be tagged as suspect in the data base because of mislabeling.

# Clod Sampling for Determination of Bulk Density

Sampling crews were instructed to collect three clod samples from each horizon if it were physically possible to obtain them. Sampling crews were instructed to prepare clods by immersing them in a Saran:acetone solution of 1:4 or 1:7 by weight, depending on

the stability of the clod. The sampling crews were instructed to record the number of times the clod was dipped into the Saran:acetone mixture. This information was used in the calculation for bulk density. [Please note that the equation for calculating the weight of airdry Saran as stated on Page 3 of 5, Section 7.0 of Appendix A is incorrect. Refer to Papp and Van Remortel (1987) for the correct equation.]

The clod sampling procedure is complicated by horizon thickness, soil structure and consistence, cohesion/adhesion properties, soil texture, root density, and the field moisture content of the soil. Because clods were not expected to be collected from every horizon, the projected success rate for sampling was 50 percent. EMSL-LV QA staff assessed that the success rate for excavating clods from mineral horizons was 48 percent. Comments by sampling crews indicated that clod sampling was more successful after the soils had been moistened by precipitation associated with Hurricane Gloria.

In one situation, the clods collected were too wet to retain their integrity in the Saran mixture. This information was recorded in the MA02 sampling log book for watershed ID3-020, sampling class I37, but there was no corresponding entry in the sample receipt log book. No other difficulties or unusual situations were recorded concerning clod sampling or the Saran treatment.

The following observations resulted from comments made at the exit meeting and the review of audit reports, field data forms, sampling log books, and sample receipt log books. The Saran:acetone ratios varied between 1:4 and 1:7. The number of Saran coatings varied between one and two, and may not have been reported to the preparation laboratory. The duration of the immersion of clods sampled from one pedon varied from less than 10 seconds to about 80 seconds. It should not be assumed that the coatings of Saran were uniform from clod to clod or from sampling crew to sampling crew.

For future surveys, it is recommended that one standard Saran:acetone solution be used. However, because acetone is volatile, the sampling crew will have to carry a separate container of acetone for maintaining the

solution at a nearly constant viscosity. Clods should be immersed in the Saran:acetone solution only once and for a set period of time. If a clod is dipped more than once, this must be recorded on the clod label and in the sampling log book. Also, safety precautions must be taken because acetone is flammable, and both Saran and acetone are carcinogens.

# Field Data Forms and Codes for Pedon and Site Descriptions

No major difficulties were encountered in filling out the SCS-developed field data forms. Audit reports indicated that a number of the sampling crews drafted a final version of the field data form derived from a rudimentary version that had been completed on-site. The intended protocol was to use the field data forms to document activities as they occurred in the field, without regard for generating a second, neater copy.

An audit report mentioned one case in which sampling crew ME02 had difficulty completing digits 1 through 17 of the free-form notes, i.e., watershed identification, unit, sampling class, and pedon azimuth. The auditor assisted the crew in completing the information.

Field data forms were reviewed in detail by EMSL-LV staff. Discrepancies on the field data forms were identified by EMSL-LV, and subsequently were corrected by the SCS state staff or by the sampling crews. This confirmation process is detailed in the QA/QC section of this report under the heading "Field Data Form Discrepancies".

The following problems concerning the codes used on the field data forms were discussed during the exit meeting:

- Microrelief-Pattern (P) -- Many sampling crews were not familiar with the microrelief codes, and did not provide this information. For future surveys, this category will not be used.
- Parent Material Degree of Weathering and Bedding Inclination (W) -- Again, many sampling crews were unfamiliar with this characteristic. For future surveys, this category will not be used.

 Size -- Two different sets of codes were provided for this category, one set on the form, and one set in the manual. It was decided that the codes indicated below would be the most useful for future surveys, and should replace those on the field data form:

Size (Roots, Pores, Concentrations)

M Micro 2 Medium
M1 Micro and fine 23 Medium and coarse
V1 Very fine 3 Coarse
11 Very fine and fine 4 Very coarse

Fine 5 Extremely

12 Fine and Medium 13 Fine to coarse

coarse

 pH -- There were no codes provided for the bromocresol green and chlorophenol red indicators. Sampling crews adopted the following abbreviated codes for each indicator:

> Bromocresol Green = BG Chlorophenol Red = PR

These codes will be placed on future field data forms.

- Diagnostic Features -- There was some disagreement regarding whether a lithic contact qualified as a diagnostic feature. Some sampling crews used it as such, while others did not. The consensus suggested that in most cases a lithic contact is not a diagnostic feature, therefore it will not appear on future field data forms.
- Land Use -- A code for cropland abandoned less than 3 years before sampling was recommended as an additional code.

Sampling crews used code descriptions from two sources during the survey, those given in the sampling manual (Appendix A) and those given on the back of the field data forms. As mentioned above, the two sets of codes were not identical. The approximately 10 percent discrepancies between the two sources were rectified by EMSL-LV QA staff during data verification.

The final recommendations for future use of the field data form were the following:

- Coordinate with the SCS to redesign the format of the field data form.
- Allow space on the field data form for all codes and their definitions.
- Add necessary codes and definitions that are currently missing.
- Correct errors in codes and definitions before using them on the revised form.

#### Entry of Field Data by the Sampling Crews

The use of the SCS-developed software package for data entry from the SCS-SOI-232 form was discussed at the exit meeting. New Hampshire was the only state that used this software package, which generates detailed tabular descriptions. The New Hampshire SCS staff used the printout to verify the data on the field data forms before the forms were mailed to EMSL-LV and ORNL.

Connecticut staff pointed out some shortcomings in the software package. For example. Histosol descriptions could not be generated. Also, some pH values were not accepted by the software, but were valid measurements for that sampling class. It was recommended that the software be revised concurrently with the field data form. For future surveys, it was suggested that information from the field data forms be entered by the SCS state staff. The data could be entered independently by ORNL, and then the two files could be compared as an error checking mechanism. Data entry operations performed by ORNL are discussed in the QA/QC section of this report under the heading "Error Checking Procedures".

## Sample Transport and Storage

Samples were required to be placed in cold storage at 4 °C within 24 hours after sampling. As previously mentioned, some sampling crews rented cold storage facilities near the sampling sites and stored samples until delivery to the preparation laboratory could be made at the end of the week.

Overall, this system was found to be efficient. Cold storage near sampling sites was an improvement over the styrofoam cooler/gel-pac system for three reasons:

- Sampling crews did not have to be concerned about refreezing gel-pacs while in the field.
- Sampling crews could consolidate the samples and make one trip to the preparation laboratory each week rather than one trip each day. In many cases, the watersheds were too far from the preparation laboratory to allow samples to be transported there each day.
- Temperatures in cold storage facilities were more stable, and were less affected by ambient air temperatures.

One pedon, watershed identification ID2-025, sampling class I6, was resampled because the temperature of the cold storage facility exceeded the protocol requirement because of a power failure.

# Preparation Laboratory Interactions and Responses

All four preparation laboratories were responsive in accommodating the schedules of

the sampling crews. This was necessary because a sampling crew often delivered samples to a preparation laboratory following a long field day or at the end of a week. Delivery time often could not be arranged during conventional work hours. In some cases, the sampling crews were given keys to the preparation laboratory and the cold storage facilities. In addition to delivering samples, sampling crew personnel obtained equipment and supplies at the preparation laboratory.

As part of their responsibilities, laboratory personnel were required to check the incoming samples against the listing recorded by the sampling crew in the sample receipt log book. This was done as soon as possible to ensure that sample sets were complete and labels were filled out properly. Occasionally the laboratory staff were able to inventory the samples while a sampling crew member was present to assist in resolving any problems.

Weekly conference calls including ERL-C and EMSL-LV staff and preparation laboratory personnel aided in the distribution of supplies and equipment, resolved issues requiring input from project management, and allowed the laboratory personnel an opportunity to share information. Discussion items from these conference calls were documented in the DDRP team reports by the project officer for the preparation laboratories.

#### Section 3

## Quality Assurance Program

EPA has mandated that the Quality Assurance Management Staff be responsible for providing technical guidelines to ensure that adequate planning and implementation of QA/QC occurs in all EPA-funded programs that involve environmental measurements. In support of this responsibility, data quality objectives (DQOs) are developed as the initial step in the process leading to the preparation of the QA project plan. The QA project plan specifies the policies, organization, objectives, and QA/QC activities needed to achieve the DQOs.

## **Data Quality Objectives**

The application of DQOs increases the likelihood of collecting data that will meet the needs of data users as well as providing for greater efficiency and success in data collection activities. The EPA Quality Assurance Management Staff has defined guidelines and specifications for developing DQOs. The inherent quality of a data set is represented in terms of five characteristics: precision, accuracy, representativeness, completeness, and comparability. Brief explanations of these characteristics follow:

- Precision and accuracy quantitative measures that characterize the variability and bias inherent in a given data set. Precision is defined by the level of agreement among repeated measurements of the same characteristic. Accuracy is defined by the difference between an estimate based on the data and the true value of the parameter being estimated.
- Representativeness the degree to which the data collected accurately reflect the population, group, or medium being sampled.

- Completeness the quantity of data that is successfully collected with respect to that amount intended in the experimental design. A certain percentage of the intended data must be successfully collected for valid conclusions to be made. Completeness of data collection is important because missing data may reduce the precision of estimates or may introduce bias, thereby lowering the level of confidence in the conclusions drawn from the data.
- Comparability the similarity of data from different sources included in a single data set. Because more than one sampling crew was collecting samples and more than one laboratory was preparing and analyzing the samples, uniform procedures must be used. This ensures that samples are collected in a consistent manner and that data from different laboratories are based on measurements of the same parameter.

## Sampling Objectives

The DQOs presented in this section were developed by the ERL-C project staff. That development included the preparation of a detailed DQO document which received external peer review, and was approved by the technical director of the Aquatic Effects Research Program before the initiation of sampling activities.

DQO concepts that had been developed for analytical laboratory operations were difficult to apply to soil sampling activities. DQOs for soil sampling were developed to ensure that field operations, e.g., sampling site location, profile description, and sampling,

would be conducted in a consistent manner. These objectives were intended to reduce the error inherent in collecting soils data and to provide an indication of the variability among sampling crews.

The following paragraphs contain information from the QA project plan (Bartz et al., 1987). Also, where the QA project plan differs in conceptual approach, the information from the draft DQO document is presented in brackets. Additional explanations appear in parentheses.

#### Precision and Accuracy--

The regional correlator/coordinator (RCC) must be a qualified soil scientist with several years experience in soil profile description and soil mapping. The RCC monitors one site per sampling crew [monitors 6 to 10 percent of the sampling units] for adherence to SCS standards, procedures, and sampling protocol modifications, and performs an independent duplicate profile description. At least one site in each state is [3 to 5 percent of the sites are] monitored with the SCS state staff representative while the remaining sites may be monitored independently. The RCC also insures that SCS state staff performs duplicate profile descriptions. During this process, the RCC identifies, discusses, and resolves any significant problems. Written reports are submitted to the sampling task leader at ERL-C within two weeks. The resolution of major problems is reported verbally within two working days.

A representative of the SCS state staff independently describes a minimum of one site per sampling crew [5 to 10 percent of the sample pedons]. These independent pedon descriptions are used to assess the variability in site descriptions among soil scientists. The SCS representative monitors adherence to protocol for site selection, labeling, and sam-The soil profile is described on the same face of the pit described by the sampling crews. The representative makes the assessment while the crew is describing and sampling the pedons. Written reviews are submitted to the sampling task leader at ERL-C within two weeks. Major problems are reported verbally within two working days.

The QA representative audits each sampling crew at least once [5 percent of the sampling units] to ensure adherence to sampling protocol. Written reports are submitted to the QA manager at EMSL-LV within two weeks. Major problems are reported verbally within two working days. The QA manager is responsible for conveying any major problems to the technical monitor or technical director.

A small percentage of the sampling units is selected randomly by EPA for sampling to determine the within-sampling class variability. These replicate pedons, called paired pedons, are selected before sampling begins. (Note: The paired pedon [see Appendix A, Section 2.7] and the routine pedon from a representative site for each selected sampling class are sampled on the same day by the same field crew. The criteria for the paired pedon are the following:

- Establish sufficient distance between the two sampling locations to avoid disturbing the paired pedon because of the sampling of the routine pedon.
- Use the same sampling class and vegetation class as for the routine pedon.
- Use the same slope position as for the routine pedon.)

Sample pits are located accurately on the soil survey maps, and the pit dimensions and the long azimuth are recorded. The pit face from which samples are removed is recorded, and the location of the pit in the field is flagged or identified so that the site can be revisited. The soil profile is described according to SCS protocols.

One horizon per day is sampled in duplicate by each field crew. (Note: The choice is made at the discretion of the field crew; however, an attempt is made to sample across the range of horizon types. The sample is taken by placing alternate trowelsful of sample into each of two sample bags [see Appendix A, Section 3.5].) One field duplicate is included in each set of samples sent to a preparation laboratory.

#### Representativeness--

The primary concerns in the selection of sampling sites are: (1) to assess soil characteristics, (2) to integrate information on parent material, internal drainage, soil depth. slope, and vegetative cover, and (3) to determine representative sampling classes. Soils which have been identified in the study regions have been combined into groups, or sampling classes, which are either known to have or are expected to have similar chemical and physical characteristics. Each of the sampling classes can be sampled across a number of watersheds in which they occur. In this approach, a given soil sample does not represent the specific watershed from which it came. Instead it contributes to a set of samples which collectively represents a specific sampling class on all watersheds within the sampling region. The lead soil scientist of the sampling party selects a sampling site representing the designated sampling class and vegetation within the designated watershed according to the DDRP soil sampling protocols (see Appendix A).

#### Completeness--

Soil sampling protocols require the sampling of 100 percent of the designated pedons and of the prerequisite number of horizons. If samples are lost, spilled, or mislabeled, it is possible to return to the field and resample the same site. If a sampling site is inaccessible, the reason for excluding the site must be formally documented by the sampling crew.

#### Comparability--

The use of standard SCS methods, protocols, and forms for the sampling phase provides field and analytical data that are comparable to data generated from SCS investigations and other studies which have utilized these standardized methods.

#### Fulfillment of Objectives

#### Precision and Accuracy--

Twenty-six paired pedons were sampled to provide information on variability between morphologically matched pedons. Horizon

types were not equally represented by the field duplicates that were sampled. Of the 526 field duplicates, A and E horizons comprised 17 percent; B horizons, 57 percent; C horizons, 16 percent; and organic horizons, 10 percent.

#### Representativeness--

All pedons sampled were within the range of morphological characteristics as assigned for their respective sampling classes. Validation activities should assess whether or not the sampling classes, as defined by the physical, chemical, and mineralogical data, are separate populations.

#### Completeness--

A total of 306 pedons were sampled of the 319 pedons initially selected, resulting in 96 percent completeness. Although this does not meet the 100 percent goal, the number of samples collected will provide sufficient data for valid conclusions to be made for all sampling classes with the exception of I21. For this sampling class, three pedons were disqualified from sampling (see Table 2 and discussion on page 11), and only two pedons were sampled. It is likely that sample size is insufficient to characterize the variability of this sampling class.

#### Comparability--

The comparability of morphological characteristics is discussed in detail under the heading "Review of Profile Descriptions". The comparability of physical, chemical, and mineralogical data obtained from different analytical laboratories under several contracts and method versions will be addressed in forthcoming quality assurance reports.

# **Quality Assurance Evaluations** and Audits

The objective of on-site observations is to assess the quality of sampling activities performed by the sampling crews. Three categories of observations were conducted for the sampling activities by the RCC, SCS state staffs, and EMSL-LV QA auditors. Included in this section are the activities observed, the level of effort for each category, deviations

from protocol, difficulties identified, and recommendations for future surveys.

# Evaluations by the Regional Correlator/Coordinator

EPA contracted a former SCS soil scientist to serve as the RCC. All sampling crews, except NY02 and ME04, were evaluated. However, the records reviewed for this report indicate that the members of sampling crew ME04 may have been evaluated during on-site visits with the other Maine sampling crews, because crew members were often rotated. Crews sampling the special interest watersheds were evaluated by the RCC during the sampling of routine pedons. The activities of PA01 were evaluated twice by the RCC.

A summary of the level of RCC evaluation activities is presented in Table 5. Although the overall 3.9 percent level of effort did not meet the DQO goal of 6 to 10 percent, the evaluations conducted were not necessarily unproductive. Rather, it seems that the DQO goal was set too high. A more realistic objective would have the RCC evaluate the activities of each sampling crew only once, unless a second evaluation is necessary to observe the implementation of corrective action. The DQO should be revised to reflect this recommendation.

Written reports prepared by the RCC included the following information:

- Watershed name.
- Date of review.
- Watershed identification.
- Sampling class.
- Cover type.

- Soil series name.
- Sampling crew.

The RCC evaluated and briefly described the manner in which the crew located the sampling site, labeled the samples, and adhered to the sampling protocols. The names of sampling crew members and SCS state staff reviewing the site were included in each report. Detailed discussions of protocol questions and suggestions made by the RCC were not provided.

The reports identified only two issues related to protocol. During the evaluation of NH01, the RCC expressed concern that samples might not be cooled adequately before arrival at the preparation laboratory. However, according to the state soil scientist, USDA Forest Service cold storage facilities were used for all samples except those obtained on September 3, 4, and 5, 1985. Those samples were cooled using the gel-pac system (S. Pilgrim, August 3, 1987, personal communi-The other concern was related to sampling site location by CT01. It was determined that all possible pedon sites at the first sampling point were underwater. Therefore, the first location was not sampled, and the sampling crew proceeded to the next sampling point.

It is recommended that the RCC should evaluate only the sampling site location and soil characterization activities and that the evaluations should be performed as early in the survey as possible. This would allow the RCC an opportunity to clarify the protocols with each crew. The clarifications should be written, and after the approval of the sampling task leader and the QA staff, the information

Table 5. Summary of On-Site Evaluations and Audits

|        | Routine | Evaluations |              |                 |     | Audits   |                  |
|--------|---------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|-----|----------|------------------|
| _      |         | Pedons RCC  |              | SCS State Staff |     | QA Staff |                  |
| State  | Sampled | number      | <del>%</del> | number          | %   | number   | %                |
| NY     | 85      | 3           | 3.5          | 5               | 5.8 | 3        | 3.5 <sup>b</sup> |
| NH     | 30      | 2           | 6.6          | 2               | 6.6 | Ĭ        | 3.3 <sup>b</sup> |
| CT, RI | 23      | 1           | 4.3ª         | 2               | 8.6 | 1        | 4.3 <sup>b</sup> |
| MA, VT | 54      | 2           | 3.7 <i>ª</i> | 3               | 5.5 | 2        | 3.7 <sup>b</sup> |
| ME     | 83      | 3           | 3.6ª         | 6               | 7.2 | 2        | 2.4 <sup>b</sup> |
| PA     | 31      | 2           | 6.4          | 3               | 9.6 | Ō        | 0.0 <sup>b</sup> |
| Total  | 306     | 13          | 4.2ª         | 21              | 6.9 | 9        | 2.9 <sup>b</sup> |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Did not meet the DQO lower limit of 6 percent.

Did not meet the DQO lower limit of 5 percent.

should be provided to all crews early enough in the survey to benefit the sampling effort. The RCC should assess the procedural variations among sampling crews, and include the assessment in the final written report. Difficulties and concerns should be discussed andany recommendations for corrective action should be provided. When corrective action is necessary for a given crew, a subsequent evaluation should be made to verify that the corrective action was implemented.

A standard questionnaire should be developed to ensure that all field operations and sampling crews are evaluated according to uniform criteria. The questionnaire also would provide better documentation of areas reviewed during the evaluation.

#### Evaluations by the Soil Conservation Service State Staff

SCS state staffs were responsible for evaluating the sampling crews in their respective states. It was desirable for these evaluations to be conducted by SCS staff who were not members of the sampling crews so that evaluations would be as objective as possible. In some cases, however, SCS state staff were also sampling crew members.

Written reports were submitted from all states. All crews except ME03 were evaluated by the SCS state staff; however, each member of ME03 was evaluated while serving on other Maine sampling crews. MA03 was evaluated during the sampling of special interest watersheds. Special interest watersheds. Special interest watershed sampling by MA02 was not reviewed independently, but sampling was conducted with a member of the SCS state staff as crew leader.

A summary of the level of SCS evaluation activities is presented in Table 5. The 6.9 percent level of effort was within the DQO goal of 5 to 10 percent. No difficulties were mentioned in the written reports. Most reports were very brief with few details concerning the activities evaluated. Site selection and sampling protocols were not discussed for every crew

It is recommended that the SCS state staffs be provided with a detailed questionnaire to ensure that all sampling site selection and soil characterization activities are evaluated and that detailed, written documentation is produced. Standard questionnaires are particularly important for these evaluations which, unlike the RCC evaluations, are performed by different individuals. It is important that all sampling crews, within and among states, are evaluated according to uniform criteria to assure the comparability of the evaluations.

Like the RCC evaluations, the SCS state staff evaluations are most useful when performed as early in the survey as possible. The procedural variations among sampling crews should be assessed and included in the written report. Difficulties and concerns should be discussed and any recommendations for corrective action should be provided. In addition, when corrective action is necessary for a given crew, a subsequent evaluation should be made to verify that the corrective action was implemented.

#### Audits by Quality Assurance Staff

EMSL-LV QA staff audited the activities performed by the sampling crews, primarily to evaluate adherence to sampling protocols. Written audit reports were provided for all sampling crews visited. Audits were not conducted for sampling crews ME03, ME04, and PA01. MA03 was audited during special interest watersheds sampling. MA02 was audited during routine sampling operations.

A summary of the level of audits conducted by QA staff is presented in Table 5. The 2.9 percent level of effort did not meet the DQO goal of 5 percent. Even if all sampling crews had been audited once by the QA staff, the overall level of effort would still fall below the DQO goal of 5 percent. The DQO for auditing activities should be modified so that all sampling crews are audited once at the outset of the soil sampling operations and a second time only if corrective action is neces-In the future, funding should be arranged to ensure that the audit program is not interrupted by "freezing" of EPA travel funds because the new fiscal year budget has not received Congressional approval.

The audit reports contained a summary of activities and difficulties encountered during the on-site visit. A standard check sheet was also included in each report. A summary

report comparing the variability observed among sampling crews within each state and the variability among all sampling crews was not provided.

Concerns identified during the audits include the following:

- One sampling crew deviated from the protocol for site location procedures.
- Samples were possibly contaminated by use of a bucket auger.
- The amounts of time that bulk density clods were immersed in the Saran:acetone solution varied.
- Field data forms were not completed by one sampling crew at the time of soil description and sampling.
- One crew used the sampling log book in the field during the site selection process, but not during soil sampling. Instead, notes were collected in the field, and the log book was completed at the office.

Auditors observed some modifications to the protocols that should be considered for future surveys:

- All members of CT01 participated in the determinations of particle size class and percent rock fragments. A consensus of the group reduced the personal bias of the data.
- A windshield snowbrush was used by CT01 for cleaning sieves and plastic sheets.
- A checklist and outline developed by the New York SCS staff were used in the field by NY02. The checklist (Appendix E) summarized the sampling activities sequentially, and recorded activities as they were performed. The outline (Appendix E) was available for reference as a further explanation of sampling protocols.
- Each member of ME01 was assigned responsibility for specific tasks during

the sampling activities which resulted in a well-organized, efficient operation.

Audits should be performed as early in the survey as possible. This would identify initial difficulties and allow for corrections and clarifications to the protocols to be made early Clarifications should be apin the survey. proved by the QA staff, and then written and provided to all crews early enough in the survey to be of benefit to the sampling effort. When corrective action is necessary, the activities of the sampling crew should be reaudited to assure that protocols are being followed as specified. Comprehensive documentation of the audits and any corrective actions will assure that a complete assessment of sampling operations is available at the end of the survey.

Reports were written for each audit, but were not submitted to the sampling task leader during sampling. Rather, the reports were submitted to the QA technical monitor, and forwarded to the sampling task leader after the close of the sampling activities.

The soil sampling task leader suggested a modification in the timeframe for the submission of audit reports and the implementation of corrective action. The auditor should bring any deficiencies in the sampling procedures to the QA manager's attention. If a problem is observed that might seriously compromise data quality, the QA manager should send a written report to the sampling task leader or designees within one week, preceded by telephone contact. Routine written reports should be submitted within two weeks.

## Review of Log Books

## Review of Sampling Log Books

Sampling log books maintained by all crews were reviewed to identify, evaluate, and summarize the following information:

- On-site observations by the RCC, SCS state staff, and QA staff, including documentation of concerns discussed with the evaluator or auditor.
- Difficulties encountered in locating any sampling site.

- Site conditions or soil characteristics that could have an adverse effect on the analytical results.
- Sampling procedures that might affect the quality of the samples collected.
- Difficulties with equipment or supplies.
- Comments regarding adherence to protocol, including any procedural modifications or recommendations for future surveys.

An examination of sampling log books indicated a wide range in the amount of detail recorded, which can be attributed partially to the lack of a specified format for log book entries. It is recommended that several forms be developed as a basis for detailed documentation of daily sampling activities, and be hardbound as a sampling log book for future surveys. Suggested forms are provided in figures 2 through 6.

A title page identifying sampling crew personnel is provided in Figure 2. Several sampling log books contained no record of sampling crew members. A number of suggested formats for summarizing the contents of the sampling log books are provided in Figure 3. A more structured format would ensure that all necessary information is entered in the sampling log books as a better record of field activities. Suggested formats for site location and soil sampling entries are provided in figures 4 and 5, respectively.

The completeness of the photographic record obtained by the sampling crews was difficult to evaluate. A master list of the exposures would have been helpful. A slide key such as that outlined in Figure 6 would provide an easy reference for sampling crews to use in labeling processed slides. A master slide list could be generated by each sampling crew, and could be included in each slide catalog submitted to the project management at the conclusion of the survey.

Sampling log books could also contain the following types of information to further increase their value as reference documents:

> Notes detailing equipment and supply needs.

- Notes on the function and use of field equipment.
- Phone numbers of all sampling crew members, SCS state staff, and others associated with the sampling operations.
- Complete records of the clod sampling procedure, including horizons successfully sampled, the number of clods obtained from each horizon, and reasons clods could not be obtained from unsampled horizons.

#### Review of Sample Receipt Log Books

Sample receipt log books were reviewed to identify, evaluate, and summarize the following information:

- Condition of samples upon arrival at the preparation laboratory.
- Labeling errors and correction of mislabeled sample numbers.
- Sampling difficulties or protocol deviations identified in sampling log books and documented upon receipt of the sample at the preparation laboratory.
- Level of field duplicates for comparison with DQO goals.
- Level of paired pedon samples for comparison with DQO goals.

The sample receipt log books did not provide all information expected. However, each preparation laboratory may maintain other notebooks containing this information that were not reviewed for this report.

#### Log Book #1--

Log book #1 followed a column and row format. Set identification, site identification, sample code, condition, and time/date were used as the column headers. A column header for noting the individual who delivered the samples was included for entries between August 21, 1985 and September 19, 1985, but

| ield Crew Members:          | <br>Field Crew:    |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| ield Crew Leader:           |                    |
| Routine Staff:              |                    |
|                             |                    |
| Additional<br>Participants: |                    |
|                             |                    |
| Notes:                      |                    |
|                             |                    |
| Audit Visits:               |                    |
| /ho:                        | Notes laken During |

Figure 2. Recommended title page for sampling log books.

|                 |         |                   | Pac                        | 1e                |
|-----------------|---------|-------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| Pedon<br>Number | County  | Sampling<br>Class | Site<br>Selection<br>Notes | Sampling<br>Notes |
|                 |         |                   |                            |                   |
|                 |         |                   |                            |                   |
|                 |         |                   |                            |                   |
|                 |         |                   |                            |                   |
|                 |         |                   |                            |                   |
| Lake Name       | Lake ID | Location          | n Page                     | 1                 |

| Lake Name | Lake ID  | Location | Page |
|-----------|----------|----------|------|
|           |          |          |      |
|           |          |          |      |
|           |          |          |      |
|           |          |          |      |
|           |          |          |      |
|           |          |          |      |
|           | <u> </u> |          |      |

| Set<br>ID | Date<br>Used | Where<br>Used | Page |
|-----------|--------------|---------------|------|
|           |              |               |      |
|           |              |               |      |
|           |              |               |      |

Figure 3. Recommended index page for sampling log books.

# Site Selection Watershed No.: Pedon No.: \_\_\_\_\_ Lake Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Location: \_\_\_\_\_ County: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Map: \_\_\_\_\_ Crew ID: \_\_\_\_\_ Sampling Class: \_\_\_\_\_ Vegetation Class: Additional Participants: \_\_\_\_\_ Site Location Notes: \_\_\_\_\_ Point 1: \_\_\_\_\_

Figure 4. Recommended format for site location notes.

| atershed No.:                 |               | Pedon No.:      |           |
|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------|
| ocation:                      |               | Lake Name:      |           |
| County:                       |               | <br>_ Date:     |           |
| lap:                          |               | Crew ID:        |           |
| iampling Class:               |               |                 |           |
| egetation Class:              |               | Additional Part | icipants: |
| /eather:                      |               |                 |           |
|                               |               |                 |           |
| Time of Arrival:              |               | Time of Departu | re:       |
| Time of Arrival:              | Samples Colle |                 | re:       |
| Time of Arrival:  Sample Code |               |                 | re:       |
|                               | Samples Colle | ected           |           |

Figure 5. Recommended format for sampling notes.

|                   | S:                                     |             |  | <del></del>                           | <del></del>                            |                   | · - · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |             |
|-------------------|--|-------------|--|---------------------------------------|--|-------------------|---|-------------|
| -                 |  | Nt          |  |                                       |  |                   | <del></del>                             | <del></del> |
|                   |  |             |  |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
|                   | <del> </del>                           | <del></del> |  |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
|                   |  |             |  | <del></del>                           | <del></del>                            | <del></del>       |   |             |
|                   |  |             | ······································ |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
|                   |  |             |  |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
|                   | ************************************** |             | *                                      |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
|                   |  |             | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·  | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |  |                   |   |             |
|                   |  |             |  |                                       | V                                      |                   |   |             |
|                   |  | <del></del> |  |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
|                   |  |             | <del></del>                            |                                       |  |                   |   | <del></del> |
|                   |  |             |  |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
|                   |  |             |  |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
| Samp              | ole Storage                            | :           | <del></del>                            |                                       |  | - 10 <del>-</del> |   |             |
|                   |  |             |  |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
| 7                 |  |             |  |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
| · · · · · · · · · |  |             |  |                                       | ************************************** |                   | <del></del> -                           |             |
|                   |  |             |  | <del>/</del>                          |  |                   |   |             |
|                   |  |             |  |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
|                   |  |             |  |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
| Samo              | ole Transpo                            | rt to Pro   | n lah•                                 |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
|                   |  |             | .p Lub                                 | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |  |                   | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·   |             |
|                   |  |             |  |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
|                   |  |             | <del></del>                            |                                       |  |                   |   |             |
|                   |  |             |  |                                       |  |                   |   |             |

Figure 5. (Continued).

| Film<br>Roll #              | Slide #      | WS ID  | WS Name | Sampling<br>Class | Slide Description |
|-----------------------------|--------------|--|---------|-------------------|-------------------|
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              | ļ  |         |                   |                   |
|                             | ļ            |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  | ***     |                   |                   |
|                             | <u> </u>     |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
| يزخو سين بياسي في مناه سبسي |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             | <del>-</del> |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              | <del> </del>                                     |         |                   |                   |
| ····                        |              | <del>                                     </del> |         |                   |                   |
|                             | <u> </u>     |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             | <b></b>      |  |         |                   |                   |
| ·                           |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         | ****              |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
| ····                        |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
| ···                         |              |  |         |                   |                   |
| <del></del>                 |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |
|                             |              |  |         |                   |                   |

Figure 6. Recommended format for slide key.

was omitted from entries after September 19, 1985. The condition of samples was noted as good for all samples received, and wet samples were indicated. Sample labeling errors were corrected by a line running through the incorrect entry with the correction made above the entry. These corrections were not initialed. No unique conditions or protocol deviations were recorded in the log book. No data for the number of horizons sampled for clods or the number of clods collected were provided.

### Log Book #2--

The format of the sample receipt log book submitted by Laboratory #2 followed a column and row organization. Column headers were the following: code, batch number, crew identification, site identification, set identification, date received, received by, delivered by, and comments. A weekly summary of the number of samples received, total number of samples collected, the number of pedons sampled for the week, and the total number of pedons sampled were provided. Mislabeled samples were identified, as were wet samples. Clod samples and horizons from which these were collected were identified in a few cases, but not routinely. Cases where no field duplicate was collected were noted.

### Log Book #3--

The log book reviewed for this report was the preparation laboratory's sample processing log book rather than the sample receipt log book. It is a compilation of the sampling labels received by the preparation laboratory. The labels were affixed to the pages of the log book near the left-hand margin of the page. On the right the sample condition, number of sample bags received, sample weight, and percent rock fragments were recorded. Sample labeling errors were corrected in the right margin. The laboratory began recording the date of sample receipt as of September 13, 1985. No unique conditions or protocol deviations were noted in the log book. No data for the number of horizons sampled for clods or the number of clods collected were provided.

#### Log Book #4--

The log submitted by Laboratory #4 was a computer-generated list of data under the

following headings: set identification, sample code, date sample was collected, date and time the sample was received, and initials of the recipient. This log provided no record of the condition of the samples upon receipt at the preparation laboratory, the number of horizons sampled for clods, or the number of clods collected. No mislabeling errors were indicated, although a few lines were crossed out in the lists with no explanation for the changes.

The variability of the information recorded in the sample receipt log books suggests that a standard format would be desirable to ensure that useful sample receipt information is recorded. This documentation includes the date, time, and person delivering the sample in addition to information identifying each sample as a unique entity. All samples delivered to the preparation laboratory should be logged in, A record of field including clod samples. duplicates and paired pedon samples would also be useful for later data summary. A suggested format for sample receipt log books is provided in Figure 7. The many column headers needed to record all necessary data suggest that an 11- by 14-inch notebook would be most useful. Columns must be wide enough to allow data to be entered legibly.

Sampling crews should record directly on the sample bag label any information that may be important in the handling of the sample by the preparation laboratory (e.g., unsieved samples) or that may affect the quality of the sample (e.g., leaking gel-pacs contaminated samples stored in the styrofoam coolers). This information should then be recorded in the sample receipt log book under "Sample Condition".

### Collection of Field Duplicates

The number of field duplicates (526) obtained during sampling satisfied the DQO goal, which specified that each sampling crew was to collect one horizon in duplicate on each day of sampling. The level of field duplicate collection was evaluated by the number of pedons sampled per day. Horizon types were not equally represented by the samples collected (see page 21).

To facilitate the evaluation of field duplicate collection, sample receipt log books

|               | I          | T          |           | T T               |                  | 1                |                 |                | Sample  | 8441  | Lional Motes        |                |
|---------------|------------|------------|-----------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|---|---|---------------------|----------------|
| Sample Mumber | Crew<br>10 | Site<br>10 | Set<br>10 | Date<br>Collected | Date<br>Received | Time<br>Received | Delivered<br>By | Received<br>By | Sample Condition Wei/Dry (W/D) Sleved/Unsieved (S/U) Beg Split (BS) Under Volume (UV) | Number of<br>Clod Samples<br>Collected<br>for Each Horizon<br>Sampled | field<br>Duplicate? | Paire<br>Pedon |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     | <del> </del>   |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     | <del> </del>   |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  | 9               |                | ,   |   |                     |                |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     | ļ              |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     | <del> </del>   |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     |                |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     | ļ              |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     | <b> </b>       |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     |                |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     |                |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     |                |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     | <del> </del>   |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     |                |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     |                |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     |                |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     |                |
|               |            |            |           |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     |                |
|               |            |            | <u>-</u>  |                   |                  |                  |                 |                |   |   |                     |                |

Figure 7. Recommended format for sample receipt log books.

should record the date of sample collection so that a determination of the number of field duplicates that should have been collected can be made easily. The sample receipt log book at one preparation laboratory did not contain the dates of sample collection, and the log book of another did not record the receipt of any special interest watershed samples.

## Review of Profile Descriptions

### Paired Pedon Descriptions

The DQO target level for paired pedon description and sampling was 30 paired pedons of the initial 313 pedons to be sampled, or a level of 9.4 percent. Four paired pedons were eliminated from consideration because access was denied or soils were highly disturbed at the sampling location, or, in one instance, because a matching routine pedon was not chosen by the computerized site selection process (see Table 2, page 11). A summary of the 26 paired pedons sampled and their distribution among the states is given in Table 6. Twenty-six paired pedons out of the 306 total pedons sampled resulted in an 8.5 percent level of replication.

Paired pedons are the geostatistical equivalent to field duplicates. The location of the paired pedons is determined using the following criteria:

- Sufficient distance between the routine and replicate pedon must be allowed to avoid disturbance from the excavation of the replicate pedon affecting the sampling of the routine pedon.
- The replicate pedon must satisfy the same sampling and vegetation class requirements as the routine pedon.
- The replicate pedon must occupy the same slope position as the routine pedon.
- Both the replicate and routine pedons must be described and sampled using the same protocols used for all routine pedons.

The objective of paired pedon description and sampling is to gain some indication of the

variability of field-observed characteristics and physical and chemical soil properties over short distances. The determination of physical and chemical parameters will yield quantitative data that may be used in statistical comparisons during data validation.

The qualitative components of the paired pedon descriptions were evaluated for this report. Differences in horizon designations and other descriptive parameters, e.g., pH, color, roots, and rock fragments, constitute the basis for comparison in this report. Analysis of profile descriptions for paired pedons may give a different picture of similarity than analysis based on the results of physical and chemical data. Any qualitative differences determined in the comparison of paired pedon descriptions are not intended to be used for any specific purpose other than documenting the variability observed during the Northeastern Soil Survey.

The paired pedon descriptions were systematically reviewed by comparing the field observations of descriptive parameters, such as horizon boundaries, horizon thickness, color, texture, roots, and pH, between the routine and paired pedons. Acceptable ranges of differences for descriptive parameters were included in the comparison. Subsequently, the paired pedons were classified as similar, moderately different, or very different based primarily on the soil morphology, but with consideration of other descriptive parameters. Of the 26 paired pedons compared, 38 percent of the pairs were evaluated as similar, 31 percent were moderately different, and 31 percent were very different.

Paired pedons may be compared with respect to both the correlation of the horizon designations and the correlation of field-measured characteristics of horizons identified for both pedons. When there is little agreement in the horizon designations for the routine and paired pedons, quantitative comparisons of field-measured characteristics are not possible.

An attempt at qualitative comparisons of the characteristics for pedons classified as very similar revealed that no additional information on variables within pedon pairs was gained above that derived by determining the proportion of horizon designations in common

Table 6. Summary of the Qualitative Differences Between Paired Pedons

| Watershed<br>ID | Sampling<br>Class | Crew<br>ID | Pedon<br>Comparison      | Total<br>Horizons  | Horizons Describ  | ed Differently<br>%         |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|
|                 |                   |            | Comparison               |                    |                   |                             |
|                 |                   |            | Massachu                 |                    |                   |                             |
| 1C2-050         | I40               | MA02       | Mª                       | 10                 | 5                 | 50                          |
| 1D1-034         | 106               | MA01       | M.                       | 9(10) <sup>a</sup> | 2(3) <sup>d</sup> | 30                          |
| 1D2-094         | I09               | MA01       | S <sup>b</sup>           | 5                  | 1                 | 20                          |
| 1D3-003         | I41               | MA02       | M<br>S<br>D <sup>c</sup> | 5<br>5             | 5                 | 100                         |
|                 |                   |            | Maine                    | 1                  |                   |                             |
| 1C1-021         | S12               | ME02       | D                        | -<br>8(9)          | 7(8)              | 89                          |
| 1E1-077         | S10               | ME03       | D<br>S                   | 8`´                | 0                 | 0                           |
| 1E1-092         | 102               | ME01       | M                        | 8<br>6<br>7        | 0                 | o"                          |
| 1E1-123         | 142               | ME01       | S                        | 7                  | 0                 | 0                           |
| 1E1-069         | S08               | ME02       | S                        | 6(5)               | 5(4)              | 80                          |
| 1E1-022         | S05               | ME02       | M                        | 9(10)              | 6(7)              | 70                          |
|                 |                   |            | Pennsyl                  | vania              |                   |                             |
| 1B3-012         | 129               | PA01       |                          | 4                  | 0                 | 0                           |
| 1B3-041         | H02               | PA01       | S<br>S<br>S              |                    | ň                 | Ŏ                           |
| 1B3-041         | I33               | PA01       | 3                        | 6                  | 0<br>0            | Ŏ                           |
| 1B3-062         | 133<br>125        | PA01       | M                        | 3<br>6<br>7        | ŏ                 | 0<br>0,<br>0'               |
|                 |                   |            |                          | 4.1                |                   |                             |
| 100.055         | •••               | *****      | New Han                  |                    | E/A)              | 67                          |
| 1C2-057         | I01               | NH01       | D                        | 7(6)               | 5(4)              | 0                           |
| 1C3-063         | I38               | NH01       | S                        | 6                  | 0                 | U                           |
|                 |                   |            | _Rhode 1                 | Island             | _                 |                             |
| 1D1-067         | IO1               | CT01       | D                        | 9                  | 6                 | 67                          |
|                 |                   |            | _ New \                  | York               |                   | . 0                         |
| 1A1-012         | E02               | NY03       | М                        | 6                  | 0                 | $\mathbf{o}_{oldsymbol{o}}$ |
| 1A2-002         | S05               | NY03       | D                        | 8(6)               | 5(3)              | 50                          |
| 1A2-037         | S05               | NY01       | D                        | 7(8)               | 4(5)              | 63<br>0"                    |
| 1A2-045         | S13               | NY02       | M                        | 7`                 | 0                 | 0′′                         |
| 1A2-052         | S02               | NY01       | M                        | 9(7)               | 7(5)              | 71                          |
| 1A3-040         | IO1               | NY02       | Ď                        | 8(7)               | 6(5)              | 71                          |
| 1A3-046         | E05               | NY03       | Š                        | 4                  | 0,0               | 0                           |
| 1B3-004         | 130               | NY02       | \$<br>\$<br>\$           | 6                  | Ŏ                 | 0                           |
| 1B3-052         | E06               | NY03       | 9                        | 6<br>5             | ŏ                 | Ō                           |
| 100-002         | E00               | 14 103     | 3                        | 3                  | •                 |                             |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>a</sup> Moderately different (M).

for those pairs. Even when the paired descriptions were similar,, the field-measured properties, e.g., horizon, thickness, were found to differ considerably. This provided the additional justification for considering the routine and replicate pedons as unmatched pairs.

The qualitative classification of the paired pedons is summarized in Table 6. A comparison of the horizon designations shared by paired pedons is a crude analysis of the integrated sum of differences of all field-

measured characteristics. The number of horizons shared by each pair and the number of those described differently within each pair are also provided in Table 6.

The pedons classified as very different were those that exhibited differences in horizon designations between 50 and 100 percent. Generally, the surface horizons of those pedons were more similar than were the subsurface horizons. Differences in horizon designations and characteristics became greater with depth.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>b</sup> Similar (S).

very different (D).

The number of horizons described for the routine pedon are given first, followed by the number of horizons described for the paired pedon in parentheses.

Horizon thickness, boundary, and pH differed.
Horizon thickness, boundary, and color differed.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> Color, pH, degree of weathering, and morphogenesis differed.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>h</sup> Horizon thickness, color, pH, and rock fragments differed.

Paired pedons that were classified as moderately different were those that differed from each other for up to 78 percent of the total number of horizon designations. In situations where the horizon designations were the same, i.e., 0 percent difference, there were still three or more horizon properties, specifically horizon thickness, depth, boundary, color, or pH, that were variable enough to justify a conclusion that the paired pedons were qualitatively different.

Comparison of paired pedons at the qualitative level appears to be a useful exercise only for describing the inherent natural variability of the sampling classes. The value of this comparison for future surveys can only be determined after the analytical data are complete, and has been analyzed statistically. The low correlation values between the routine and replicate pedons suggests difficulty in sampling qualitatively similar pedons utilizing the sampling design employed in this survey. The lack of qualitative similarity between paired pedons does not necessarily mean these soils are dissimilar for the purposes of this project, because in this project similar soils are defined by sampling classes. every case, paired pedons fell into the same sampling class, and were identified as the same soil series.

The results of the laboratory analyses for paired pedon samples should be analyzed and reviewed before a final determination of the variability between paired pedons and, thereby, within sampling classes, is assessed. The conclusion that only 38 percent of the paired pedons were rated as similar should be considered when examining the laboratory data. It may also be difficult to quantitatively or qualitatively evaluate the variability of the paired pedons and the sampling classes based on the analytical results only.

In summary, this examination of the field-described characteristics points out the difficulty in matching horizon-for-horizon and the associated field characteristics over the distance of a few meters for soils identified as the same series. Matching data for all pedons within a sampling class over the entire region is expected to be even more difficult. The paired pedons are true field duplicates, but the examination of the data should be considered a validation activity. Paired pedons should be

included in future surveys to describe the variability of soils within a sampling class over a distance of a few meters.

### Independent Pedon Descriptions

In addition to the RCC and SCS state staff evaluations previously discussed, independent pedon descriptions occasionally were made (see Table 7). These were compared with the sampling crews' pedon descriptions. A total of 23 independent descriptions were made by either the RCC and the sampling crew or by the sampling crew and the SCS state staff, and in five cases both evaluators made independent descriptions of the same pedons.

The purpose of performing independent pedon descriptions is to provide a basis for qualitatively evaluating the variability that occurs when two or more soil scientists describe the same pedon. Although the standards and guidelines routinely used by the SCS are often based on precisely defined terms, the consistency in application is not always perfect. A certain degree of subjectivity is inherent in this process, creating some variability between individuals making observations on the same soils. For example, the color of one horizon may be described in three different ways by as many describers. The precision of comparing a soil sample with a Munsell color chip is primarily influenced by the amount of sunlight present, the moisture content of the sample, and the ability of the describer to distinguish hue, value, and chroma differences.

Independent pedon descriptions are useful for comparing notes on measuring subjective field characteristics, such as horizon boundaries, soil texture, or color. Usually, horizon designations are determined by evaluating a range of physical characteristics and interpreting their relationship to soil development. Independent pedon descriptions are comparable only where the describers focus on the same face or portion of the pedon.

Independent pedon descriptions made by two describers are summarized in Table 7. The horizon designations for each pedon description were evaluated with respect to all field-measured variables recorded on the field

Table 7. Summary of Independent Pedon Descriptions Evaluated

|                      |          |        | scribers     |      |        | zons Describe                    | d             |
|----------------------|----------|--------|--------------|------|--------|----------------------------------|---------------|
| Watershed            | Sampling | Crew   | <u>Evalu</u> | ator |        | Differently                      | <del></del> . |
| ID                   | Class    | ID     | RCC          | SCS  | Total  | number                           | %             |
| 1A2-052              | S02      | NY01   | ×            | -    | 11     | 3 <sup>#</sup><br>0 <sup>b</sup> | 27            |
| 1D3-044              | I40      | NY01   | -            | x    | 8      | 0,0                              | 0             |
| 1A3-040              | IO1      | NY02   | -            | ×    | 7(8)   | 2 <sup>b,c</sup>                 | 29            |
| 1A2-002              | S05      | NY03   | •            | X    | 7(8)   | 0 <sup>b,c</sup>                 | 0             |
| 1A2-054              | S14      | NY02   | x            | X    | •` ′   | •                                | -             |
| 1A2-012              | E2       | NY03   | ×            | X    | -      | •                                | -             |
| 1E2-049              | S13      | ME01   | X            | X    | -      | -                                | -             |
| 1E3-042              | S13      | ME02   | •            | X    | 7(6)   | 1 <sup>D,C</sup>                 | 14            |
| 1E2-038 <sup>d</sup> | S13      | ME04   | -            | X    | • (-)  | 7                                | 0             |
| 1E1-054              | S14      | ME02   | -            | X    | 8(7)   | 16                               | 13            |
| 1E2-069              | S18      | ME02   |              | x    | 5(4)   | D, C, Ø                          | 20            |
| 1E2-007              | S02      | ME02   | _            | x    | 9      | , b, c                           | 11            |
| 1E1-074              | E5       | ME03   | X            | _    | 9<br>5 | 0,0                              | Ö             |
| 1E1-062              | Ĭ2       | ME02   | x            | _    | 7(8)   | 36,1                             | 43            |
| 1B2-028              | I33      | PA01   |              | X    | 8      | ŏ                                | Ö             |
| 1B3-041              | I29      | PA01   | _            | x    | 6      | Ŏ                                | Ŏ             |
| 1B3-053              | I25      | PA01   | ×            | x    |        | ž                                | •             |
| 1B3-053              | I33      | PA01   | x            | •    | 7(5)   | 4                                | 57            |
| 1C3-031              | 100      | 1 701  | ×            | x    | 7(0)   |                                  | ٠,            |
| 1D2-094              | I41      | MA01   | ^            | X    | 9      | 0 <sup>b</sup> , f               | 0             |
| 1D3-034              | I5       | MA02   |              | x    | 5      | 0.b,f                            | ŏ             |
| 1D1-031              | E3       | MA01   |              | ^    | 3      |                                  | -             |
| 1D3-053              | ES       | IVIAUI | x            | -    | 9      | 2 <sup>b,c</sup>                 | 22            |
| 1D3-033<br>1D1-034   | -<br>E3  | MA01   | •            | •    | 9(10)  | E a                              | 56            |
| 1B3-056              | H2       | CT01   | •            | X    | 4      | 5#<br>0 <sup>9</sup>             | 0             |
|                      |          |        | ×            | •    | 4      | U                                | 0             |
| 1D3-033              | I10      | CT01   | •            | X    | •      | 0                                | ō             |
| 1D3-025              | 106      | CT01   | •            | X    | 8<br>6 | 0                                | Ö             |
| 1D3-025              | -<br>Tog | ALLIO4 | •            | •    | 0      | U                                | U             |
| 1C2-037              | I05      | NH01   | X            | X    | 0(7)   | 1 <i>h,i</i>                     | 13            |
| 1C2-037              | 109      | NH01   | x            | •    | 8(7)   | 5 b, e, i                        | 83            |
| 1C2-057              | E02      | NH01   | •            | X    | 6(5)   | 5                                | 00            |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>a</sup> Horizon designations.

data forms, according to the same procedure used for paired pedon descriptions. Soil colors were the most often noted differences between the descriptions. These may be related to variability in the describers' vision or actual color variability in the samples. Soil pH differences may have been due to differences between soil samples or the types of pH reagent, as well as differences in perception of the pH color charts.

Unless it was certain that the descriptions were made within a specific, delineated area of the exposed soil profile, independent pedon description comparisons were only qualitative. It was not possible to conduct a

more detailed comparison of the field descriptions because only one pedon (watershed ID 1A1-012) seemed to have been described by all three describers for a specific portion of the pedon.

It is recommended that the protocols for future surveys specifically indicate that all independent pedon descriptions must be performed in the same portion of the pedon. The pedon should be marked to clearly delineate the profile for description. If descriptions are not performed in the same locations, it should be clearly noted on the field data form. Independent pedon description comparisons

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>b</sup> Soil color.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>c</sup> Field-observed pH.

Horizon designations were determined by both describers together.

<sup>,</sup> Texture.

Structure.

g Lithologic discontinuity.

Horizon thickness.

<sup>&#</sup>x27; Horizon boundary.

yield little useful information unless the exact portion of the same profile is described.

It is also recommended that the independent field descriptions be reviewed among all participants while still in the field so that differences and discrepancies can be discussed and documented at that time for the benefit of the data users. The objective is not to reach a consensus on the best description, but is to provide an exchange of information concerning the inherent variability among describers and the characterization of soil development features.

### **Data Entry and Management**

This section describes the software, procedures, and QA/QC measures used during the development of the computerized data base. Data entry protocols included visual scanning of the data forms, computer entry, entry checking, and editing. The specific software, procedures, and checks varied according to data type and also evolved through time because of adjustments in the data collection protocols, reporting forms, available computer software and equipment, and personnel.

### Soil Mapping Data Files

During the spring and summer of 1985, SCS soil scientists mapped 145 watersheds in eight northeastern states. Transects were made on the mapped watersheds to determine mapping unit composition. SCS state staffs prepared watershed attribute maps that delineated soil types, vegetation cover types, bedrock geology, and depth to bedrock at a scale of 1:24,000. Bedrock geology delineations were derived from existing geological maps. The other maps were derived from data collected as part of this project.

Preliminary map legends and mapping unit descriptions were prepared by SCS state staffs using existing soil surveys, topographic maps, and aerial photography. After mapping was completed, the provisional legends and mapping unit descriptions were correlated at a workshop held in Saranac Lake, New York, in July 1985. Using data from field transects, the workshop participants applied a consistent mapping unit nomenclature and composition from state to state. Most of the mapping

units were described as consociations or complexes of soil series, although a few mapping units were defined as consociations or complexes at a higher taxonomic category e.g., Great Group.

Each mapping unit description form included the mapping unit name, slope, land-scape position, landform, parent material, depth to bedrock, taxonomic classification, and inclusions of unnamed soils occurring in the mapping unit. The map legends and mapping unit description forms were scanned for legibility, completeness, and accuracy. Any discrepancies were resolved through communication with the SCS state staffs.

Following the workshop, both ERL-C and ORNL entered the watershed map attributes and mapping unit description data into their respective computer systems. Data entry at ORNL was performed by an in-house data entry center and the resulting files were transferred to SAS files (SAS Institute Inc., 1987) on the IBM 3033 system. ERL-C input the data using dBase III software on an IBM personal computer. The ERL-C files were transferred to ORNL in an ASCII format, were uploaded to SAS files on the IBM 3033 system, and the two entries were compared for discrepancies. Transect data were computerized by an inhouse data entry center using a double entry procedure, and were uploaded to SAS files on an IBM 3033 system.

Discrepancies in watershed attributes were resolved through legend corrections and some remapping by the SCS state staffs, and the revised data were entered into the data base. ERL-C used the ARC-INFO geographic information system (GIS) to digitize the watershed attribute files. Then ERL-C compared the updated watershed attribute data with the digitized watershed attribute data, and resolved any inconsistencies. Finally, the GIS-derived mapping unit areas were adopted as the most reliable.

The mapping unit data were separated into three files: mapping unit legend file, mapping unit composition file, and mapping unit component file. The mapping unit legend file contains data pertaining to the identification of the mapping unit, including the symbol, name, and physiographic information. The mapping unit component file contains data on

each named soil or inclusion, such as slope, drainage class, and taxonomic classification. The mapping unit composition file contains the percentage of individual components found in each mapping unit. The reasons for splitting the data into three files were to reduce the amount of redundant information stored in a single file and to facilitate the review and comparison of the mapping unit components.

ERL-C sent listings of the computerized mapping unit files to the SCS state staffs for review and resolution of apparent inconsistencies. Several iterations of updates were entered into the SAS files at ORNL. The corrections were entered into a change file which contained the record identifier, the variable name, the old value, and the new value. The change file was then compared with each record in the data base. Only when all three items matched an observation in the data base was the new value inserted. This method of updating the data base virtually eliminated the possibility of adjusting the wrong observation or variable.

After the updates were made, ORNL generated frequency tables of the coded variables and compared these tables with lists of valid codes. The frequency tables were used to build code translation tables containing the codes and definitions. The code translation tables are stored as SAS format libraries in the data base.

The final step in editing the mapping data files involved the labeling of variables and, where necessary, the modification of variable names and labels to ensure consistency among the data files. The complete contents of the mapping files are given in Turner et al. (1987).

### Soil Sampling Data Files

Each sampling location and soil profile were described in conjunction with soil sampling. During the training workshop at the University of Maine-Orono, the sampling crews were instructed in uniform procedures for describing the soils and recording data on the field data forms.

Upon completion of sampling in the fall of 1985, copies of the data forms were sent to ORNL, ERL-C, and EMSL-LV. At ORNL, the forms were scanned visually for completeness, legibility, and the validity of code entries. ORNL personnel noted any missing, illegible, or suspect data.

Following resolution, the data were computerized at ORNL by an in-house data entry center using double entry procedures and were then transferred to SAS files on the IBM 3033 computer system. The data were entered as two linked files. The base file, designated 232 BO, contains one record for each pedon. Data pertinent to the entire pedon such as identifier, date sampled, location, taxonomic classification, and physiographic information, are stored in this file. These data were taken from the first page of the field data form. The horizon file, designated 232 HO, contains the horizon characteristics, such as horizon depth, thickness, color, structure, and other specific horizon features. These data were reported on pages 2 through 4 of the field data form.

The EMSL-LV staff developed and implemented procedures to evaluate the data recorded on the field data forms (Bartz et al., 1987). Following receipt of the field data forms, EMLV-LV examined the forms for suspect data and sent a list of discrepancies to the SCS state offices for resolution. SCS returned the confirmed or corrected data. These data were entered into a change file, and were integrated into the data base.

ORNL generated frequency tables of coded variables and compared them against a list of valid codes. Invalid or suspect codes were identified and sent to EMSL-LV for resolution. This resulted in another round of updates which were incorporated into the data base.

As with the mapping data, labels were assigned to all field variables and, where necessary, variable names and labels were modified to ensure consistency among the various data files. The complete contents of the field data files are discussed in Turner et al. (1987).

### Section 4

### Recommendations and Conclusions

Recommendations have been provided throughout this report to resolve issues and concerns stemming from the Northeastern Soil Survey sampling operations. These recommendations are summarized in this section to aid in the design of future surveys. Although the detailed discussions provided in the text of this report are not reproduced in this section, the appropriate sections are referenced, and the recommendations are presented in the order of occurrence in the text. A summary assessing the overall quality of the soil sampling operations concludes this report.

### Recommendations

#### Site Selection

 As an alternative to site selection by the sampling crew, SCS state staff could identify and flag sampling site locations before soil sampling. Then sampling crews could be sent to sites that have been previously evaluated to meet soil and vegetation class requirements.

#### Sampling Difficulties

- If possible, groundwater should be removed from saturated soils before sampling. This could be accomplished by digging a sump pit upstream of groundwater flow or by digging a number of sump holes around the pit.
- Methods for draining wet soil pits include digging a sump hole in a corner of the pit away from the face to be sampled or using a mechanical pump.

- Bucket augers or post-hole diggers should be used to collect soil samples only if no other sampling technique is feasible. The use of bucket augers or post-hole diggers should be documented on the field data form.
- Adequate time should be taken to carefully sample each pedon. All necessary sampling equipment should be available for use on-site.
- Sampling should not be performed during severely inclement weather if it can be avoided.
- Data from samples obtained via bucket augers or post-hole diggers should be tagged with "W" in the data base.

### Equipment

- Extra sharpshooter shovels should be procured as replacements for those damaged during pit excavation.
- Monitoring the temperatures of styrofoam coolers should not be necessary in future surveys.
- A 35-mm camera with a flash unit and wide-angle lens should be provided to each sampling crew.
- ASA-400 film provided the highest quality of exposures during the sampling period.
- A standard scale for soil depth demarcations should be used in all pedon photographs.

- A standard card to identify pedons should appear in all photographs.
- Pedon faces should be photographed either in complete sunlight or complete shade, using a flash unit where necessary.
- Horizon boundaries should be marked with golf tees for greater visibility in the photographs.
- Hand pumps should be supplied to all sampling crews.

### Sample Sieving

- Sampling crews should note any protocol deviations (e.g., unsieved soils) in the sampling log books and directly on the sample labels to ensure that the preparation laboratory receives this information.
- Preparation laboratory personnel should note any unusual sample conditions or protocol deviations in the sampling receipt log books.

## Clod Sampling for Determination of Bulk Density

 Greater consideration should be given to the use of a standard Saran:acetone mixture for the coating of clods. Information on the viscosity of the solution and the dipping procedure should be noted in the sampling log books.

#### Field Data Forms and Codes

- Codes to be eliminated from future versions of the field data form include the following:
  - Micro-relief pattern (P).
  - Parent material degree of weathering and bedding inclination (W).
  - Diagnostic features lithic subgroups (L).

• Codes selected to characterize size are the following:

Size (Roots, Pores, Concentrations)

M Micro
M1 Micro and fine
V1 Very fine
Very fine and fine
Tine
Fine and medium
Medium and coarse
Coarse
Very coarse
Extremely coarse
Fine to coarse

- Codes to be added to future versions of the field data form include:
  - Field-measured properties Soil pH:

BG = bromocresol green PR = chlorophenol red

- Land use cropland abandoned less than 3 years.
- Recommendations for future use of field data forms include:
  - Assist the SCS in redesigning the format of the computerized SCS-SOI-232 field data form.
  - Allow ample space on the field data form for all codes and their definitions.
  - Add, correct, or delete codes and their definitions, as necessary.
- Use the SCS-developed software package to enter field data into the computer. Revisions of the data entry package should be concurrent with revisions of the field data form.

## Regional Correlator/Coordinator Evaluations

- The RCC should evaluate all sampling crews at least once, as early as possible in the soil sampling period.
   Follow-up reviews should be conducted where necessary.
- A standard format should be developed for written evaluations performed by the RCC.

 Variation among sampling crews within and among states should be evaluated.

## Soil Conservation Service State Staff Evaluations

- All crews should be evaluated at least once, as early as possible in the soil sampling period. Follow-up reviews should be conducted where necessary.
- SCS state staffs should be provided with a specific evaluation form to ensure that detailed, written documentation of each site visit is provided.
- Site selection and soil description methods within and among each state's crews should be evaluated.

### Quality Assurance Staff Audits

- All sampling crews should be audited as early as possible in the sampling operations.
- Before leaving the sampling site, the auditor should inform the sampling crew of discrepancies identified during an audit.
- Detailed audit reports should be submitted to the sampling task leader within two weeks following the completion of the audit. If major audit discrepancies are noted, telephone contact should be made within two days following the completion of the audit.
- A summary report should be provided comparing the variability observed among sampling crews, both within and among the states.
- Where the quality of certain samples is seriously questioned, the suspect pedon should be resampled. The new set of samples should be analyzed and the corresponding data output compared to that from the original samples.

- Audit reports should contain enough detail to fully document the areas evaluated. Issues identified during the audit should be listed and their resolution described. Follow-up reviews to ensure protocol adherence should also be provided.
- The QA staff representative should ensure that each sampling crew is audited, and that evaluations by the RCC and SCS state staffs are made.
- Information from audit reports and evaluations should be used to assess the ability of contract bidders, e.g., private consultants, to accomplish sampling under strict specifications, before the awarding of sampling contracts.

### Sampling Log Books

- Several formats for documentation of field information by the sampling crews were presented as examples (see figures 2 through 6). A preprinted sampling log book in standardized format should be provided to each sampling crew.
- Sampling log books should contain information concerning:
  - Visits by RCC, SCS state staff, and QA auditors, including documentation of issues and concerns discussed.
  - Difficulties encountered in site location activities.
  - Difficulties encountered during soil sampling operations.
  - Irregular site conditions or characteristics that could have an adverse effect on the resulting analytical data.
  - Sampling activities that could have an adverse effect on the quality of samples collected.

- Documentation of equipment deficiencies.
- Comments concerning protocol adherence or modification.
- Comparisons of paired pedon descriptions, noting similarities and differences.
- Phone numbers of the preparation laboratory, the SCS state staff, and others associated with the DDRP Soil Survey.
- A record of clod samples collected, including documentation when clod samples were not collected.

### Sample Receipt Log Books

 Each sampling crew should record sample information upon delivery of the samples to the preparation laboratory, and the laboratory personnel should verify the information as soon as possible. A suggested format containing the necessary information to assess sample condition and initiate sample tracking is provided in Figure 6.

### Independent Pedon Descriptions

- The protocols should require that all independent pedon descriptions are made along the same profile face.
- All independent pedon descriptions should be reviewed among the participants while still in the field, in order to provide a comparison of variability among the describers.

### Conclusions

Generally, soil sampling activities proceeded as planned within the expected time frame. The sampling methods and quality assurance activities developed for use in the Northeastern Soil Survey sampling activities ensured the collection of soil samples of known and documented quality. The coordination of sampling activities among the many participants was a large-scale, complex task that was successfully performed as originally conceived with a minimum of unanticipated difficulties and modifications. A number of conclusions and recommendations have been made in this report to assist planners of similar projects.

### References

- Bartz, J. K., S. K. Drousé, M. L. Papp, K. A. Cappo, G. A. Raab, L. J. Blume, M. A. Stapanian, F. C. Garner, and D. S. Coffey. 1987. *Direct/Delayed Response Project: Quality Assurance Plan for Soil Sampling, Preparation, and Analysis.* EPA/600/8-87/021. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Las Vegas, Nevada. 438 pp.
- Cappo, K. A., L. J. Blume, G. A. Raab, J. K. Bartz, and J. L. Engels. 1987. *Analytical Methods Manual for the Direct/Delayed Response Project Soil Survey.* EPA/ 600/8-87/020. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Las Vegas, Nevada. 318 pp.
- Chen, C. W., S. A. Gherini, J. D. Dean, R. J. M. Hudson, and R. A. Goldstein. 1984. Development and Calibration of the Integrated Lake-Watershed Acidification Study Model. pp. 175-203 In: Schnoor, J. L. (ed.) 1984. *Modeling of Total Acid Precipation Impacts*. Butterworth Publishers, Boston, Massachusetts. 222 pp.
- Cosby, B. J., R. F. Wright, G. M. Hornberger, and J. N. Galloway. 1984. *Model of Acidification of Groundwater in Catchments*. Internal project report submitted to EPA/North Carolina State University Acid Precipitation Program.
- Eyre, F. H. 1980. Forest cover types of the United States and Canada. Society of American Foresters, Washington, D.C.
- Lammers, D., D. Cassell, J. J. Lee, J. Ferwerda, D. Stevens, M. Johnson, R. Turner, and B. Campbell. (In preparation.) Field Operations and Quality Assurance/Quality Control for Soil Mapping Activities in the Northeast Region. EPA/600/3-87/017. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Oregon. 127 pp.

- Papp, M. L. and R. D. Van Remortel. 1987. Direct/Delayed Response Project: Field Operations and Quality Assurance Report for Soil Sampling and Preparation in the Northeastern United States, Vol. II: Preparation. EPA/600/4-87/030. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Las Vegas, Nevada. 142 pp.
- Reuss, T. O., and P. M. Walthall. 1987. Final report on interpretation of U.S. EPA pilot soil survey. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Oregon.
- SAS Institute Inc. 1987. SAS Applications Guide, 1987 Edition. SAS Institute Inc., Cary, North Carolina. 272 pp.
- Schnoor, J.S., W. D. Palmer, Jr., and G. E. Glass. 1985. Modeling Impacts of Acid Precipitation for Northeastern Minnesota. pp. 155-173 In: Schnoor, J. L. (ed.) 1984. *Modeling of Total Acid Precipitation Impacts*. Butterworth Publishers, Boston, Massachusetts. 222 pp.
- Turner, R. S., J. C. Goyert, C. C. Brandt, K. L. Dunaway, D. D. Smoyer, and J. A. Watts. 1987. Direct/Delayed Response Project: Guide to Using and Interpreting the Data Base. Draft ORNL/TM-10369. Environmental Sciences Division Publication No. 2871. Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, Tennessee.
- U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 1985.

  Direct/Delayed Response Project. Longterm Response of Surface Waters to
  Acidic Deposition: Factors Affecting
  Response and a Plan for Classifying that
  Response on a Regional Scale. Volume
  V: Appendix B.2 Soil Survey--Action
  Plan/Implementation Protocol. U.S.
  Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis,
  Oregon.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 1986.

Definition of Soil Sampling Classes and
Selection of Sampling Sites for the Northeast. U.S. Environmental Protection
Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Oregon.

### Appendix A

# Sampling and Preparation Laboratory Protocols for the Direct/Delayed Response Project Soil Survey

The following protocols were used by the sampling crews and the preparation laboratory personnel participating in the Northeastern DDRP Soil Survey. The draft manual was revised using the information obtained from the sampling and preparation laboratory training workshop held on August 7 and 8, 1985. The draft did not undergo external review and was not formally released by EPA. It is presented here without editorial correction. Note that various Soil Conservation Service documents were used in the preparation of this draft; however, because no editorial corrections have been made, those documents are not cited.

## Field Sampling Manual for the National Acid Deposition Soil Survey

by

L. J. Blume<sup>1</sup>, D. S. Coffey<sup>2</sup> and K. Thornton<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Lockheed Engineering and Management Services Company, Inc. Las Vegas, Nevada 89109

<sup>2</sup>Northrop Services, Inc. Corvallis, Oregon 97333

<sup>3</sup>FTN and Associates Little Rock, Arkansas 72211

Contract No. 68-03-3249

Project Officer

Phillip A. Arberg
Exposure Assessment Research Division
Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory
Las Vegas, Nevada 89114

ENVIRONMENTAL MONITORING SYSTEMS LABORATORY
OFFICE OF RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT
U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY
LAS VEGAS, NEVADA 89114

### Notice

This document is a preliminary draft. It has not been formally released by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency and should not at this stage be construed to represent Agency policy. It is being circulated for comments on its technical merit and policy implications, and is for internal Agency use/distribution only.

The mention of trade names or commercial products in this manual is for illustration purposes, and does not constitute endorsement or recommendation for use.

Contents Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 1 of 2

### Contents

| Sect  | ion ·  | Page                                 | Revision                             |
|-------|--|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Table | ceesowledgments  | . 1 of 1                             | 2<br>2<br>2<br>2                     |
| 1.0   | Introduction   | 1 of 2<br>1 of 2<br>1 of 2           | 2<br>2<br>2                          |
| 2.0   | Site Selection  2.1 Watershed Selection  2.2 Watershed Mapping  2.3 Sampling Classes  2.4 Watershed and Sampling Class Selection  2.5 Final Selection of Sampling Locations  2.6 Special Conditions  2.7 Paired Pedons                                     | 1 of 8<br>1 of 8<br>2 of 8<br>3 of 8 | 2<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>2 |
| 3.0   | Site and Profile Description  3.1 Scope  3.2 Field Properties  3.3 Profile Excavation  3.4 Photographs of Profile and Site  3.5 Important Points Concerning Horizon Descriptions  3.6 Field Data Form-SCS-232  | 3 of 5<br>3 of 5                     | 2<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>2      |
| 4.0   | Sampling Procedures 4.1 Scope  | 1 of 5<br>1 of 5                     | 2<br>2<br>2<br>2                     |
| 5.0   | Soil Preparation Laboratory 5.1 Scope 5.2 Sample Storage 5.3 Sample Preparation 5.4 Shipment of Subsample to Analytical Laboratories 5.5 Sample Receipt by the Analytical Laboratory from the Preparation Laboratory 5.6 Shipment of Mineralogical Samples | 1 of 8<br>1 of 8<br>1 of 8<br>5 of 8 | 2<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>2      |
| 6.0   | Summary of Physical and Chemical Parameters and Methods 6.1 Physical Parameters  |                                      | 2<br>2<br>2                          |

Contents Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 2 of 2

### Contents (continued)

| Seci        | ion                                  | Page             | Revision         |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 7.0         | Bulk-Density Determination 7.1 Scope | 1 of 5<br>1 of 5 | 2<br>2<br>2<br>2 |
| 8. <b>0</b> | Crews, Supplies, and Equipment       | 1 of 3           | 2<br>2<br>2      |
| 9.0         | References                           | 1 of 1           | 2                |
| Appe        | endices                              |                  |                  |
| A.          | Field Data Forms and Legends         | 1 of 22          | 2                |

Figures Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 1 of 1

### Figures

| Figure |   | Page   | Revision |
|--------|---|--------|----------|
| 4-1    | NADSS Label A   | 4 of 5 | 2        |
| 5-1    | National Acid Deposition Soil Survey (NADSS) Form 101 | 2 of 8 | 2        |
| 5-2    | NADSS Label B   | 4 of 8 | 2        |
| 5-3    | National Acid Deposition Soil Survey (NADSS) Form 102 | 7 of 8 | 2        |
| 5-4    | National Acid Deposition Soil Survey (NADSS) Form 115 | 9 of 8 | 2        |

Tables
Revision 2
Date: 9/85
Page 1 of 1

### Tables

| Table |   | Page   | Revision |
|-------|---|--------|----------|
| 2-1   | Comparison of Coniferous, Deciduous, and Mixed Vegetation Types to Society of American Foresters (SAF) Forest Cover Types | 7 of 8 | 2        |
| 4-1   | Visual Estimate of Percent Volume of Rock Fragments Greater than 75 mm Correlated to Percent Weight                       | 4 of 5 | 2        |
| 7-1   | Specific Gravity of Water   | 5 of 5 | 2        |

Acknowledgments Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 1 of 1

### Acknowledgments

Contributions provided by the following individuals were greatly appreciated: D. Lammers, B. Jordan, M. Mausbach, R. Nettleton, W. Lynn, F. Kaisacki, B. Waltman, W. Hanna, B. Rohrke, G. Raab, J. Bartz, B. Blasdell, and R. Harding.

The following people were instrumental in the timely completion and documentation of this manual: Computer Sciences Corporation word processing staff at the Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory-Las Vegas, C. Roberts at the Environmental Research Laboratory-Corvallis, and M. Faber at Lockheed Engineering and Sciences Company.

### 1.0 Introduction

### 1.1 Scope

This field sampling manual is written to guide personnel involved in the collection of soil samples for the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's (EPA) Direct/Delayed Response Project (DDRP) Soil Survey. All field and laboratory personnel must be trained by a field manager or another person knowledgeable in the procedures and protocols detailed in this manual. The scope of the field sampling manual covers field operations, shipping of samples from the preparation laboratory to the analytical laboratory, and sample receipt by the analytical laboratory.

This manual is a companion to the [laboratory] methods manual for the National Acid Deposition Soil Survey (NADSS) and the quality assurance plan for the National Acid Deposition Soil Survey (NADSS). There is some repetition among the manuals which is necessary to maintain continuity and to document concisely the methodology of the soil survey.

The basic goals of the NADSS procedures are to collect representative samples without contamination, to preserve sample integrity for analysis, and to analyze samples correctly. Analytical methods have been chosen that offer the best balance between precision, accuracy, sensitivity, and the needs of the data user.

The overall objective of NADSS is to predict the long-term response of watersheds and surface waters to acidic deposition. Based on this research, each watershed system will be classified according to the time scale in which it will reach an acidic steady state, given current levels of deposition. Three classes of watershed systems are defined:

Direct response systems: Watersheds with surface waters that either are presently acidic (alkalinity <0), or will become acidic within a few (3 to 4) mean water residence times (<10 years). NOTE: Most lakes in the northeast have relatively short residence times, i.e., less than 2 to 4 years.

Delayed response systems: Watersheds in which surface waters will become acidic in the time frame of a few mean residence times to several decades (10 to 100 years).

Capacity protected systems: Watersheds in which surface waters will not become acidic for centuries to millennia.

The objective of this manual is to define the means by which to characterize and sample soil mapping units using U.S. Department of Agriculture-Soil Conservation Service (USDA-SCS) descriptive techniques.

### 1.2 Personnel

### 1.2.1 Field Sampling Crews

The field sampling crews will consist of soil scientists experienced in the National Cooperative Soil Survey. Crews will be numbered consecutively beginning with 01. For example, if Maine has three crews, they will be ME01, ME02, and ME03. These crews will be responsible for selecting the pedon location, sampling the soil, and describing the profile. The field crew leader will have ultimate responsibility for each crew's daily activities, such as placement of the pedon within each sample class, correct labeling of sample bags and forms, and prompt shipment of samples.

### 1.2.2 Regional Coordinator/Correlator

The Regional Coordinator/Correlator (RCC) will monitor six to ten percent of the sampling units to ensure adherence to SCS standards and field sampling protocol. Three to five percent of the sites will be monitored in conjunction with the monitoring responsibilities of the SCS staff of each state. The remaining sites will be monitored independently of the state SCS staff. Monitoring will include a review of profile descriptions and selection of sites for sampling. The RCC will be a qualified soil correlator with many years of experience with soil profile description and soil mapping. He will also ensure that the SCS State Office Staff perform duplicate profile descriptions. In this process, he will review these descriptions and point out potential problems.

### 1.2.3 Quality Assurance/Quality Control Representative

The quality assurance/quality control (QA/QC) representative will review five percent of the sampling units to ensure adherence to sampling protocol as specified in this manual.

### 1.2.4 SCS State Office Staff

Members of the SCS State Office Staff will independently describe five to ten percent of the sample pedons and site descriptions and will monitor field sampling protocol. At least one site per state will be audited by the RCC representative. The use of duplicate profiles, determined prior to sampling, will assess variability in site description and sampling techniques between soil scientists and will check adequacy of site selection and labeling. This process requires that the staff perform their assessment while the crew is describing and sampling the pedons. NOTE: Reviews by the RCC, QA/QC representative, and the SCS State Office Staff should be documented and all reports should be submitted to the EPA-Las Vegas QA Manager.

### 1.2.5 Soil Preparation Laboratory

Four soil preparation laboratories will participate in NADSS. These laboratories include the Cornell University Characterization Laboratory at Ithaca, New York, the University of Maine Soils Laboratory at Orono, Maine, the University of Connecticut Soil Testing Laboratory at Storrs, Connecticut, and the University of Massachusetts Soil Testing Laboratory at Amherst, Massachusetts.

Small bags, data forms, labels, audit samples, shipping containers, and other equipment will be shipped to these soil preparation laboratories by EPA-Las Vegas. The field soil scientists will use these laboratories as sample drop-off points and supply pick-up points.

### 1.2.6 Analytical Laboratories

Routine and QA samples will be shipped in batches to each analytical laboratory from the preparation laboratory. Each batch will consist of a maximum of 39 routine samples and field duplicates, 2 audit samples, and a preparation laboratory duplicate.

### 2.0 Site Selection

### 2.1 Watershed Selection

Because the objectives of DDRP are focused on making regional inferences, it was critical that the 150 watersheds selected for mapping of soils and watershed characteristics constitute a representative sample of the region. The 773 watersheds included in Region I of the National Surface Water Survey (NSWS) provided an excellent starting point from which to draw a subsample of 150 for the northeastern portion of DDRP, because: (1) the NSWS lakes were selected according to a rigorous probability sampling method (stratified by five subregions and three alkalinity classes within each subregion), and (2) water-chemistry information was available from NSWS for these lakes.

The 150 watersheds to be studied in DDRP also are part of the Phase II lake-monitoring program of NSWS that will provide a data set that contains both water-chemistry and watershed information. Therefore, the procedure used to select these watershed incorporated criteria relevant to both DDRP and NSWS. The procedure consisted of five steps, which are summarized as follows:

- Step 1: Lakes of low interest (too shallow, highly enriched, capacity protected, polluted by local activities, or physically disturbed) were excluded.
- Step 2: Lakes too large to be sampled (>200 ha) were excluded.
- Step 3: A cluster analysis was performed on a set of chemical and physical variables to group the remaining 510 lakes into three clusters of lakes with similar characteristics.
- Step 4: A subsample of 60 lakes was selected from each cluster, then the three subsamples were weighted to represent the overall population of lakes in the northeast.
- Step 5: Lakes with watersheds too large to be mapped at the required level of detail (watersheds >300 ha) were excluded from the subsamples.

This procedure identified 148 lakes and watersheds, spread across the three clusters. Note that the three groups differ primarily in their alkalinities, pH levels, and calcium concentrations. To maintain the ability to regionalize conclusions drawn on the sample of 148 watersheds, the precision of information characterizing each of these watersheds should be comparable, and each cluster should be described at the same level of detail as the others.

### 2.2 Watershed Mapping

During the spring and summer of 1985, 145 of the 148 watersheds were mapped. The logistics and protocols of the watershed mapping are described in chapters 6 and 7, Volume 5, Appendix B.2 Soil Survey -- Action Plan/Implementation Protocol.

A total of about 440 mapping units were identified in the 150 watersheds. Sampling each of the 440 mapping units would not necessarily be the best way to describe adequately the chemistry of the region's soils. A better procedure is to combine the identified soils into groups, or sampling classes, which are either known or expected to have similar soil-chemical characteristics. Each of these sampling classes can then be sampled across a number of watersheds in which they occur, and the mean characteristics of the sampling class can be computed. These mean values and the

Section 2.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 2 of 8

variance about the mean can then be used to build "back-up" area- or volume-weighted estimates of each watershed's characteristics.

For this procedure to work, it is critical that a sufficient number of samples are taken (five or more) to characterize the variability of each sampling class. This necessitates aggregating the number of mapping units into a reasonable number of sampling classes, given budgetary constraints. Thus, the central goal is to develop a method of grouping the large number of soils into a reasonable number of sampling classes.

### 2.3 Sampling Classes

### 2.3.1 Data Base

The data base contains about 2200 observations that were recorded on the field forms during the soil mapping of 145 watersheds selected as part of the DDRP and the Phase II lakes survey. This information includes:

Taxonomic class (series, subgroup, great group). Parent material.

- Origin.
- Mode of deposition.

Drainage class.

Slope class.

Slope configuration.

Family texture.

Geomorphic position.

Dominant landform.

Surface stoniness.

Percent inclusions.

Percent complexes.

Estimated depth to bedrock.

Estimated depth to permeable material.

This information was considered in aggregating similar mapping units into sampling classes. The data base also includes the area of each mapping unit, number of occurrences, and percent of the watershed area.

Separate data files also exist for vegetation type, vegetation class, and geology. The data management system, dBase III, runs on an IBM PC-XT microcomputer at the EPA Environmental Research Laboratory in Corvallis, Oregon (ERL-C).

### 2.3.2 Evaluation of Sampling Classes

A taxonomic approach was used to identify 38 sampling classes as a foundation for aggregating similar mapping units. Taxonomic classification is based on similarities among soil properties. This taxonomic scheme was modified to reflect the major factors influencing soil chemistry.

### 2.4 Watershed and Sampling Class Selection

### 2.4.1 Sampling Class Objectives

The primary goal of this part of the sample selection procedure is to determine which sampling classes will be sampled in which watersheds. The sample sites should be selected to meet the following objectives:

- Objective 1: To characterize all the sampling classes with similar levels of precision.
- Objective 2: To describe the variation in watershed characteristics.
- Objective 3: To describe the variation in the acid neutralizing capacity (ANC) clusters developed from the lake survey.

### 2.4.2 Sampling Class Constraints

To meet these three objectives, a series of constraints was developed based on the allocation of samples to sampling classes and watersheds. The constraints that must be met follow:

- Constraint 1: Approximately equal numbers of samples will be taken from each sampling class.
- Constraint 2: Approximately two samples will be taken from each watershed.
- Constraint 3: Not more than one sample will be taken from each sampling class in each watershed.
- Constraint 4: Samples will be selected over the range of ANC clusters within each sampling class.

The method outlined here was developed to randomly select watersheds and sampling classes, within these constraints, using a simple selection algorithm.

### 2.4.3 Selection Algorithm

The method selection proceeds through a series of stages. Wherever possible, the rationale for the particular approach taken is described and cross-referenced with the objectives and constraints.

The selection method is based on the use of a systematic, weighted, random sample of the watersheds that contain any given sampling class. First, the number of samples to be taken in each sampling class is determined (Constraint 1).

#### 2.4.3.1--

The first task is to construct a matrix of the occurrences of each sampling class in each watershed. This matrix is used to: (1) prepare a list of the watersheds that contain each sampling class, and (2) determine the number of different sampling classes in each watershed.

When the number of watersheds represented in each sampling class has been determined, it is possible to allocate the samples to sampling classes (given Constraint 3).

Section 2.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 4 of 8

Using eight samples per sampling class as a base, the following sample allocation occurs. Eight samples will be allocated to each sampling class where there are more than eight watersheds; where there are eight watersheds or less, one sample will be allocated to each watershed.

#### 2.4.3.2--

The next task is to determine which watersheds will be selected within each sampling class. In this process, constraints 2 and 4 are centrally important.

If watersheds are selected randomly within each sampling class, the watersheds that contain a large number of sampling classes will have more samples allocated to them than will the watersheds that have fewer sampling classes. To counteract this effect, and to help approach an approximately equal number of samples per watershed, the watersheds will be weighted (during the random selection procedure) by the inverse of the number of sampling classes that they contain.

For example, if one watershed contains four different sampling classes, it will be exposed to the sample selection procedure four times. Thus, it will be given one quarter of the weight of a watershed that contains only one sampling class. Using this technique, both watersheds have an approximately equal probability of being selected. This scheme will work accurately if there are equal numbers of watersheds considered in each sampling class; the presence of unequal numbers will cause some deviation from the most desirable distribution of samples.

To avoid overemphasizing the very common soils, only one sample will be taken from each watershed that contains only one sampling class. All named soils in a complex soil series are counted as occurrences in their respective sampling classes. For example, a Tunbridge-Lyman soil complex in a watershed mapping unit would be considered as one occurrence of sampling class S12, which contains the Tunbridge series, and one occurrence of sampling class S13, which contains the Lyman series.

The method used to select watersheds within sampling classes will be to sort the watersheds by ANC cluster and then take a systematic, weighted, random sample using the weights described above. This procedure selects a random starting point in the list of watersheds and then selects watersheds at regular intervals from the (weighted) list. This method ensures a selection across the range of ANC clusters.

To ensure that a watershed is not sampled more than once for a given sampling class, the weight assigned should not be larger than the interval used in the systematic sampling. Weights should be scaled down if they exceed the systematic sampling interval.

#### 2.4.3.3--

Once this procedure has been followed for each sampling class, the initial selection of watersheds and sampling classes can be summarized. Three options are possible at this point:

- The weighing factors can be adjusted iteratively until the allocation is acceptable.
- Samples can be arbitrarily moved among watersheds to reach the desired allocation.
- The selection can be accepted as adequate.

If the selection is not considered adequate, the most acceptable solution is to repeat the procedure using adjusted weights. This process could be automated, if necessary, with the weight of a watershed being increased until it receives sufficient samples.

The method of sampling class and watershed selection outlined here is designed to satisfy the objectives and constraints listed in sections 2.4.1 and 2.4.2. Given the nature of the constraints, it is likely that there is no single, perfect solution; however, this method allows the production of an acceptable selection that is a compromise between the demands of the different objectives.

### 2.5 Final Selection of Sampling Locations

### 2.5.1 Rationale and Objectives

Soil surveys generally have a holotypic purpose of describing the typical soil series or soil phases found in a watershed. The DDRP is interested in obtaining samples that are integrative or that represent the sampling class in the watershed. This sampling class may contain six or seven similar soils. The sampling purpose is not to describe the characteristics of a specific soil phase, but rather to describe the characteristics of the sampling class. Because all soils within a sampling class are considered similar in soil chemistry, the specific sampling location within a sampling class can be selected at random with respect to the soil series. The procedures described in this section are intended to: (1) characterize the range of variability that occurs within a sampling class, and (2) characterize the soils within a sampling class using similar levels of precision.

Determining the sampling location within the watershed sampling class is a two-step process.

### 2.5.2 Sampling Site Selection

There are five steps in selecting representative sampling sites within a sampling class:

- NOTE: Steps 1 through 5 will be completed by ERL-C. Maps that show the five random points, as discussed in Step 3, will be given to each SCS sampling crew.
- Step 1: Prepare a list of all mapping units and the sampling class or classes in which they occur. Most mapping units will occur only in one sampling class; complexes may occur in two or more sampling classes. For each complex, record the proportion of area occupied by each soil series in the complex (from the mapping unit description). This proportion should be average proportion, excluding the area occupied by inclusions.
- Step 2: For each watershed, obtain the watershed map and identify the sampling classes selected for that watershed. Mapping-unit delineations for each soil series must be aggregated and identified for each sampling class.
- Step 3: Transfer a grid that has a cell size of about 2 acres to a Mylar sheet. Overlay the grid on the watershed map. Select a set of random coordinates (using a computer program) and determine if the point they represent intersects one of the sampling classes selected on that watershed. If the point does not fall within the selected sampling classes, draw another pair of random coordinates. Continue this process until five random points have been identified in each sampling class.

Record their order of selection from 1 through 5. Some sampling locations may not be accessible, so alternate locations must be provided.

- Step 4: If the point falls on a sampling unit that is a complex, draw a random number, Y, between zero and the total percentage of the soils in the complex (e.g., a 50-30 percent complex of Tunbridge-Lyman would sum to 80, so the maximum random number is 80). Determine the percentage of the area in the desired sampling class (e.g., Tunbridge is 50 percent). Call this number X. If X is less than Y, draw another set of coordinates. This procedure minimizes the probability that complexes will be overselected for sampling.
- Step 5: For each location selected, overlay appropriate maps and note the vegetation class associate with each point as: (1) coniferous, (2) deciduous, (3) mixed, (4) open dryland, or (5) open wetland.

NOTE: For comparison of coniferous, deciduous, and mixed vegetation types to Society of American Foresters (SAF) forest cover types, see Table 2.1.

Within the sampling class, sample the pedons that have one or more of the soils in the sampling class and that have one or more of the vegetation classes noted above.

### 2.5.3 Sampling Site Locations

The procedure described above is to locate the general vicinity of the site on the watershed soil maps. This procedure is completed, and the soil maps marked with the random points are distributed, before the sampling crew leaves for the field. The point marked on the map may represent an area of 100 m² in the field. Within this general vicinity there may be inclusions, rock outcrops, a complex soil, or other factors that make finding a soil of the specific sampling class difficult. The following procedures will be used to select the specific sampling site in the watershed.

#### 2.5.3.1--

Obtain a list of the sampling classes to be determined on that watershed. Also obtain a map that clearly shows the five predetermined random points for selection.

#### 2.5.3.2--

As best as can be determined, the sampling crew will go to the location of the first potential sampling site indicated on the map. If that location is inaccessible, go to the second potential sampling site but note the reasons in the field logbook and, if possible, on the SCS-232 field form.

#### 2.5.3.3--

If the location is accessible and the soil series at the site is in the selected sampling class and the vegetation class is appropriate, sample the pedon.

#### 2.5.3.4--

If the randomly selected site contains a soil series that is not a member of the sampling class, or if the vegetation class is not appropriate from a random-number table, select a random

Section 2.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 7 of 8

number between 1 and 8, where 1 represents the direction north, 2 represents northeast, 3 represents east,... 8 represents northwest. Walk along a straight line in the direction chosen until the first occurrence of the proper combination of soil series and vegetation class is found. The maximum distance walked corresponds to a radius of 155 m around the randomly selected site. If a proper combination of soil series and vegetation class is not obtained after five tries, go to the next potential site on the list. The number of traits at each site and the number of alternative sites attempted should be recorded on Form SCS-232.

These procedures provide a method for selecting a specific site and locating that site in the field.

Table 2-1. Comparison of Coniferous, Deciduous, and Mixed Vegetation Types to Society of American Foresters (SAF) Forest Cover Types

| SAF Cover Type Name                       | Cover Type Number |
|---|-------------------|
| Coniferous Vegetation Type                | ,<br><b>s</b>     |
| Jack Pine                                 | 1                 |
| Balsam Fir                                | 5                 |
| Black Spruce                              | 12                |
| Black Spruce - Tamarack                   | 13                |
| White Spruce                              | 107               |
| Tamarack                                  | 38                |
| Red Spruce                                | 32                |
| Red Spruce - Balsam Fir                   | 33                |
| Red Spruce - Frasier Fir                  | 34                |
| Northern White Cedar                      | 37                |
| Red Pine                                  | 15                |
| Eastern White Pine                        | 21                |
| White Pine - Hemlock                      | 22                |
| Eastern Hemlock                           | 23                |
| Deciduous Vegetation Type                 | s                 |
| Aspen                                     | 16                |
| Pin Cherry                                | 17                |
| Paper Birch                               | 18                |
| Sugar Maple                               | 27                |
| Sugar Maple - Beech - Yellow Birch        | 25                |
| Sugar Maple - Basswood                    | 26                |
| Black Cherry - Maple                      | 28                |
| Hawthorn                                  | 109               |
| Gray Birch - Red Maple                    | 19                |
| Beech - Sugar Maple                       | 60                |
| Red Maple                                 | 108               |
| Northern Pin Oak                          | <sup>b</sup> 14   |
| Black Ash - American Elm - Red Maple      | 39                |
| Mixed Vegetation Types                    |                   |
| Hemlock - Yellow Birch                    | 24                |
| Red Spruce - Yellow Birch                 | 30                |
| Paper Birch - Red Spruce - Balsam Fir     | 35                |
| White Pine - Chestnut Oak                 | 51                |
| White Pine - Northern Red Oak - Red Maple | 20                |

# 2.6 Special Conditions

#### 2.6.1 Inaccessible Watersheds

An attempt should be made to sample every watershed. However, some watersheds may have inaccessible areas or areas where sampling access is denied. Alternative sampling classes are selected during the random selection process as back-up sampling locations to ensure an equitable distribution of samples among sampling classes. Initial estimates of watersheds that may be remote and difficult to sample or that may be inaccessible include one in New Hampshire, one in Massachusetts, two in Connecticut/Rhode Island, three in Maine, and five in New York. Each state will formally document the reasons for excluding each watershed.

#### 2.6.2 Inclusions

Inclusions are not representative of the soils in the sampling class and should not be sampled if the randomly selected site is located on an inclusion. The procedures described earlier accommodate this contingency. Generally, inclusions are soils associated with a sampling class other than the one being sampled. The chemical properties of the inclusion, therefore, are described when the other sampling class is sampled.

# 2.6.3 Agricultural Sites

The open-dryland class contains some cultivated fields. If these sites are randomly selected and access permission is obtained, the sites will be sampled. Agricultural practices, however, generally alter the chemical characteristics of the soil through fertilization, liming, and other activities.

Note samples taken from agricultural sites on the field forms. During subsequent modeling and statistical analyses, these samples may or may not be incorporated in representing watershed soil chemistry.

#### 2.7 Paired Pedons

Paired pedon sites for sampling are selected and assigned in advance by ERL-C. These sites will be sampled in conjunction with the corresponding routine pedon. The sample code identifying the paired pedon should be treated as a routine pedon.

The location of the paired pedon is determined by the crew leader using the following criteria:

- Establish sufficient distance between the two sampling locations to avoid disturbance of the paired pedon from sampling of the routine pedon.
- Use the same sampling unit and vegetation class as the routine pedon.
- Use the same slope position as the routine pedon.
- Use the same profile description and sampling protocol as the routine pedon.

# 3.0 Site and Profile Description

# 3.1 Scope

Complete descriptions of the soils are essential to the soil survey and serve as a basis for soil identification, classification, correlation, mapping, and interpretation. Standards and guidelines are necessary for describing soil properties. Precisely defined standard terms are needed if different people are to record their observations so that others can understand those observations. However, the field scientist must always evaluate the adequacy of standard terms and add needed information.

The description of a body of soil in the field, whether an entire pedon or a sample within it, records the kinds of layers, their depth and thickness, and the properties of each layer. These properties include color, texture, structure, characteristics of failure and disruption, roots and animals (and their traces), reaction, salts, and boundaries between layers. Some properties that apply to the entire sampling unit are also measured and recorded. Generally, external features are observed from study of a pedon that is judged to be representative of the polypedon.

For a soil description to be of greatest value, the part of the landscape that the pedon represents should be known and recorded. Descriptions of pedons that represent an extensive, mappable area are generally more useful than are descriptions of pedons that represent the border of an area or a small inclusion. Consideration is given to external and internal features of the soil, related features such as vegetation and climate, and the setting -- the position of the particular soil in relation to other soils and to the landscape as a whole.

Pedons used for detailed study of a soil are selected tentatively at first. Areas that previous studies have shown to contain the kind of soil to be described and sampled are most commonly chosen. The pedon is usually selected on the basis of external evidence. Depending on the purpose of the study, the selected pedon may be one that has properties either near the middle of the range of the taxon or near the limits of the range. After a sampling site is tentatively located, it is probed with an auger, spade, or sampling tube to verify that the soil at the site does have the diagnostic features of the soil and that its properties at the site represent the desired segment of the soil's range.

A pit that exposes at least one clean, vertical face (approximately 1 m across) to an appropriate depth is convenient for studying most soils in detail. Horizontal variations in the pedon, as well as features too large or too widely spaced to be seen otherwise, can be observed. The sides of the pit are cleaned of all loose material disturbed by digging. The exposed vertical faces are then examined starting at the top and working downward, to identify significant differences in any property that would distinguish between adjacent layers. Boundaries between layers are marked on the face of the pit, and the layers are identified and described.

Photographs can be taken after the layers have been identified but before the vertical section has been disturbed for description. If point counts are to be made for estimation of volume of stones or other features, the counts are made before the layers are disturbed. If samples are to be taken to the laboratory for analyses or other studies, they are collected after the soil has been described.

Horizontal relationships between soil features can be observed in a cross section of each exposed layer by removing the soil above it. Each horizontal section must be large enough to expose any structural units. A great deal more about a layer is apparent when it is viewed from above, in horizontal section, as well as in vertical section. Structural units that are otherwise not

Section 3.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 2 of 5

obvious, as well as in vertical section. Structural units that are otherwise not obvious, as well as the third dimension of many other features, can be seen and recorded. Patterns or color within structural units, variations of particle size from the outside to the inside of structural units, the pattern in which roots penetrate structural units, and similar features are often seen in horizontal section more clearly than in a vertical exposure.

# 3.2 Field Properties

The following parameters will be determined in the field by established SCS methods and protocols <sup>124</sup>.

- Horizon type.
- Horizon depth.
- Color.
- Texture.
- Structure.
- Consistence.
- Boundary type.
- USDA/SCS soil taxonomic designation.
- Surface vegetation type and abundance.
- Parent material.
- Physiography.
- Relief.
- Slope.
- Aspect.
- Permeability.
- Erosion class.
- Root distribution.
- Drainage class.
- Depth to bedrock.Bedrock exposure.
- Volume percent coarse fragments by visual estimation.

20 to 75 mm.

75 to 250 mm.

>250 mm.

- Diagnostic features.
- Mottle type and abundance.

The field crew will use Form SCS-SOI-232 for field description which is coded for easy input onto a computerized data file. The protocol for horizon description is discussed in detail in the SCS Soil Survey Manual<sup>2</sup>, the SCS National Soils Handbook<sup>1</sup>, and Principles and Procedures for Using Soil Survey Laboratory Data<sup>3</sup>.

# 3.3 Profile Excavation

The exposed face of the pedon must be wide enough to permit pedon description, the collection of bulk-density clods, and the collection of 5.5 kg or more of sample from each of the significant horizons. The pedon face should be photographed (Section 3.4) before destructive sampling begins.

# 3.4 Photographs of Profile and Site

Photographic documentation of the sampling phase will be useful for later reference and future discussions concerning specific site considerations, and will complement field descriptions. Field crews will provide their own single-lens reflex, 35-mm cameras or equivalent and will obtain film locally. Ektachrome, ASA 400 slide film is recommended, but field crews should determine film speed suitability based on their knowledge of the site. If flash attachments and tripods are available, they should be included in the sampling equipment. For film-quality consistency, all slides should be developed using prepaid Kodak mailers.

Photographic documentation requires that a precise logbook be kept to identify corresponding slides. The indexing system can be developed by the field crew, but must be based on the sample code from NADSS Label A to identify the site. The system must be fully explained in the logbook. Once the slides have been developed, they should be labeled on the slide mounts with the sample code and any other information the field crew deems necessary. Slides will be stored in 3-ring binders in slide files and will be submitted with the logbook to ERL-C at the conclusion of the sampling phase of the survey. Histosols should be photographed by sequential placement of the augered horizons on the surface.

The pedon face, tree canopy, understory vegetation, and representative landscape or landform will be photographed for each site sampled. Scale should be provided by including a meter stick, rule, or other suitable item in the photograph. Pedon face identification can be positively made by including NADSS Label A or an index card displaying Label A information in the photograph. SCS protocols for field photography are outlined in the SCS National Soil Survey Manual<sup>2</sup>, Chapter 9.

# 3.5 Important Points Concerning Horizon Descriptions

The sample site should be free of road dust and chemical contamination. State all known spraying of pesticides and herbicides.

Soils will be sampled only from freshly dug pits large enough (1 m x 1 m) to allow sampling of all major horizons to a depth of 1.5 m or to bedrock.

Samples will be taken from continuous horizons >3 cm thick, including the C horizon if present. Discontinuous horizons will be sampled when considered significant by the crew leader.

Clods will be collected for all horizons sampled, except the O<sub>i</sub> horizon. The bulk density procedure is detailed in Section 7.0.

All obvious horizons in a pedon are to be sampled, although a maximum of six horizons had been previously specified as a limit for cost estimates and planning purposes. It is the decision of the field soil scientist whether or not a horizon is significant enough, for DDRP purposes, to be sampled and described. Therefore, if the field soil scientist believes there are eight significant horizons, he should sample all eight. Pedons can not be dug in wetlands. The recommended procedure for obtaining a 5.5-kg sample is to use a peat-sampling corer.

Sample pits will be accurately located on the soil survey maps, and the pit dimensions and the azimuth perpendicular to the pit face will be recorded. The location of the pit in the field should be flagged or identified so that it can be revisited, except in areas where this is not possible due to landowner restrictions. One horizons per day will be sampled twice by each field crew. This will be the field duplicate (FD). The choice of which horizon to duplicate is at the discretion of the field crew. The procedure for obtaining this duplicate sample is to alternate when placing trowel or

Section 3.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 4 of 5

shovelfuls of sample into each sample bag. The horizon that is chosen for a field duplicate should be alternated each day so that a complete range of field duplicates by horizon is achieved.

## 3.6 Field Data Form - SCS-232

All field data should be recorded on Form SCS-SOI-232, which is reproduced along with a modified legend in Appendix A. The SCS is responsible for making sure that completed copies of these forms are sent weekly to the following groups:

One copy to the preassigned soil preparation laboratory for each crew.

One copy to the EPA Environmental Monitoring Systems Laboratory-Las Vegas (EMSL-LV) to:

Lockheed Engineering and Sciences Company 1050 E. Flamingo, Suite 120 Las Vegas, Nevada 89109

One copy to Oak Ridge National Laboratory (ORNL) to:

Oak Ridge National Laboratory P.O. Box X Building 1505, Room 343 Oak Ridge, Tennessee 37831

and one copy to the EPA ERL-C to:

Environmental Research Laboratory-Corvallis 200 S.W. 35th Street Corvallis, Oregon 97333

NOTE: The following changes and additions from the normal procedure should be made to complete Form SCS-232.

Page 1 of 4

Under "Sample Number," "unit" is synonymous with "pedon."

Under "Describers Name" add the Crew ID in the upper right hand corner.

Under "Location Description and Free Form Site Notes" the first six digits of line 1 should be the site ID (Lake ID), the seventh digit is a dash, the eight digit is the random number point (1 to 5), the ninth digit is a dash and digits 10 through 12 are the sampling class, digit 13 is a dash, digits 14 through 16 are the azimuth perpendicular to the described pit face, the digit 17 is a degree symbol "o".

Under "Vegetation" describe the three major species by decreasing basal area. Clearcut should be noted as "CC." Describe dominant vegetation types prior to clearcut in the free form site notes.

Section 3.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 5 of 5

The following soil description parameters need not be completed by field crews, but may be if information is accessible: Precep, Temperatures °C, Weather Station Number, ER.

#### Page 2 of 4

Dry color should be determined when needed for classification.

"VOL (LAT/TOT)" need not be completed but may be if information is accessible.

#### Page 3 of 4

Mottles should be described as indicated in Chapter 4 of the National Soils Survey Handbook.

"Effervescence" will be determined at the preparation laboratory and need not be completed here.

#### Page 4 of 4

The three divisions under "Rock Fragments" correspond to the three volume particle size estimates:

line 1 = 2 to 75mm line 2 = 75 to 250 mm line 3 = >250 mm

#### Legend

Under "Site Description Codes" for page 1 add "AA" for a local site description.

# 4.0 Sampling Procedures

# 4.1 Scope

The objective of the field sampling phase of the DDRP is to characterize the soil and watershed characteristics across the regions of concern, the northeastern United States, and the southwestern portion of the Blue Ridge Province.

Field sampling includes the collection of a 5.5-kg field sample that will yield a minimum of 2 kg of air-dried material of particle sizes <2 mm. This requires 5.5 kg of mineral soil, or as much soil possible to fill the presupplied 46 cm x 53 cm sample bags, and twice this volume for organic soils. In addition, bulk-density clods will be sampled for laboratory determination of field bulk density.

# 4.2 Sampling the Pedon

# 4.2.1 Field Sampling Protocols

Field sampling protocols are based on the standard methods routinely used by SCS. The following procedural steps were developed by the National Soil Survey Laboratory, Lincoln, Nebraska, and are detailed in a publication titled *Principles and Procedures for Using Soil Survey Laboratory Data* <sup>3</sup>. An edited version of these procedures is reproduced here. The protocol for collecting bulk-density samples is specified in Chapter 7.0 of this manual.

# 4.2.2 Sampling Party Responsibilities

The sampling party has responsibility to obtain samples representative of the pedons selected for characterization. Although some sampling protocol has been specified, field-crew decisions are necessary on how deep to sample, horizon delineation, thickness of horizon (or interval) sampled, what material should be excluded from the sample, and the usefulness of compositing samples. The sampling party ensures that site and pedon descriptions are adequate.

#### 4.2.3 Pedons for Characterization

Pedons for characterization studies should be sampled to a depth of 1.5 m where possible. In cases where the lower depths of the profile appear homogenous and the C horizon material is particularly difficult to penetrate in (e.g., dense basal till), it may be feasible to dig the pit to 1.5 m. However, it is still possible that a dense basal till will show a variable pH from the upper to the lower sections of the C horizon. If this were true, a sample would be desirable even if the material is hard to dig. These types of decisions are judments to be made to the best of the ability of the sampling-crew leader and should be documented in the field sampling notebook. The sampling party needs to be alert to taxonomic questions that may arise and sample appropriately to resolve the questions (i.e., base saturation for Alfisol versus Ultisol may require subsamping at a specific depth). Appropriate sampling increments depend on the kind of material and the proximity of the horizon to the soil surface. Horizons in the upper 1 m would usually be split for sampling if they are more than 30 cm thick, excluding organic horizons. Uniform horizons below 1 m are usually split for sampling if they are more than 75 cm thick. The sampling party must exercise good judgment in this decision process. The ideal sample contains each soil material within the horizon in proportion to its occurrence in the pedon. The sampler attempts to approximate the ideal sample

Section 4.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 2 of 5

by carefully sampling a selected section of the horizon. The sample is usually taken along a pit face from horizon boundary to horizon boundary and between arbitrary lateral limits.

#### 4.2.4 Lateral Limits

Lateral limits encompass short-range variability observed at the site. If a recurring pattern (i.e., mottles, durinodes, nodules, plinthite) is discerned, extend the lateral limits to four or five cycles of the pattern. If this produces too much material, the sample is mixed, quartered, and subsampled. At some point, the repeat cycles become too large or soil properties change sufficiently that lateral extension is impractical or undersirable. An example is the gilgai pattern in Vertisols. Proper characterization may warrant the sampling of two sets of horizons or pedons.

#### 4.2.5 Stratified Horizons

If a horizon is stratified or otherwise contains contrasting materials, each material should be carefully described. Some contrasting materials can be sampled independently, but in many cases the materials are intertwined to the point that practicality dictates they be sampled together. Each material should be described and the proportions should be noted, however. A decision on what, if any, materials should be excluded from the sample is an integral part of collecting a representative sample. The sampling party may decide to include soil material in cicada casts and nodules as part of the sample, but to exclude material from a badger tunnel.

Coarse fragments (>20 mm) will be excluded from all samples sent to the laboratory except for bulk-density clods.

# 4.2.6 Composite Samples

One sampling technique designed and used here to average lateral variability is to sample three or four relatively small segments (20 to 30 cm wide) of the same pedon at several points around the pit. The samples are composited, mixed, and a representative sample is sent to the laboratory for analysis.

# 4.2.7 Filling Sample Bag

Approximately 5.5 kg or more of soil less than 20 mm in diameter should be placed in each plastic sample bag. However, the amount of soil obtained for chemical analysis is highly dependent on the amount of coarse fragments contained in each horizon.

For example, if the horizon is determined to contain 50 percent coarse fragments by a visual estimate, the corresponding weight estimate for coarse fragments is 65 percent (Table 4.1). This estimate indicates that a 5.5-kg sample will contain 35 percent of material <2 mm or only 1.8 kg of sample. Field sampling protocols specify that a minimum of 2 kg of soil of particle size <2 mm is necessary for the chemical and physical analyses specified. Care must be taken to ensure that field samples will yield the minimum 2 kg of soil in the <2 mm particle-size class. Table 4.1 illustrates that a 5-kg sample from horizons containing coarse fragments greater than 60 percert by weight or 45 percent by volume will not be sufficient to obtain a minimum 2-kg sample. Minimum sample weights for horizons with coarse fragments and weights in this category are provided in Table 4.1.

NOTE: This table is included as a guide and probably will not be most useful in the field, but the concept explained is important.

Section 4.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 3 of 5

The general rule to follow is that the minimum amount of *field* sample is 5.5 kg of the ≤20-mm particle-size fraction. If the estimated 2- to 20-mm size class exceeds 45 percent by the volume estimate, then two 5.5 kg samples or two full sample bags of mineral soil is necessary. Two full bags of organic horizon material are requested in every case possible. Plastic sample bags should be pre-labeled with NADSS Label A. Attach the label to the center of the bag, not near the top of the bag. Double check that all designations are correct, complete, and legible. Large, easily removed nonmineral material should not be included in the sample. Limit handling of the soil sample to avoid contamination.

Table 4-1. Visual Estimate of Percent Volume of Rock Fragments Greater than 75 mm Correlated to Percent Weight

| 6 Volume | % Weight | Weight of <20 mm<br>particles in a<br>5-kg sample | Sample weight required to obtain a minimum 2-kg sample |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------|----------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 0        | 0        | 5.00  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3<br>7   | 5        | 4.75  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | 10       | 4.50  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 10       | 15       | 4.25  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 13       | 20       | 4.00  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 16       | 25       | 3.75  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 20       | 30       | 3.50  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 23       | 35       | 3.25  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 27       | 40       | 3.00  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 31       | 45       | 2.75  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 35       | 50       | 2.50  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 40       | 55       | 2.25  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 45       | 60       | 2.00  | 5.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 50       | 65       | 1.75  | 5.7  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 56       | 70       | 1.50  | 6.6  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 62       | 75       | 1.25  | 8.0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 68       | 80       | 1.00  | 10.0   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 74       | 85       | 0.75  | 13.0   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 80       | 90       | 0.50  | 20.0   |  |  |  |  |  |

In wet soils, such as Histosols, excess water should be drained before sealing the sample bag.

The top of the plastic sample bags should be folded down in 2.5-cm sections. The folded sections should then be stapled or tied with twist-ties to seal.

The plastic bags should then be placed within pre-labeled canvas bags. Label the canvas bag below the center with indelible ink or use presupplied label stamps. Record exactly the same information contained on NADSS Label A. Seal the canvas bag by tying or stapling. Place the samples in coolers with Blue Ice as soon as possible after field sampling. Transport samples to the preparation laboratory as soon as possible.

# 4.2.8 NADSS Label A (Figure 4-1)

The date sampled is entered in the format DD MMM YY. For example, March 14, 1985, will be 1 4 M A R 8 5. The crew ID will consist of four digits: the first two are alphabetic, representing the state; the second two are the number assigned to each crew for the state, for example, NY 01. The site ID consists of six digits and appears on the assigned watershed map as:

Section 4.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 4 of 5

|        | <del></del> |                  |              |
|--------|-------------|------------------|--------------|
| 1      | 2           | 3                | 4 5 6        |
| •      | <del></del> | •                | , ,          |
| Region | Subregion   | Alkalinity Class | Watershed ID |

The sample code represents the SCS (FIPS) soil ID code and the sample type. The first three digits of the sample code represent the type of sample (R11 = routine sample, one bag, one sample; R23 = routine sample, 2nd of 3 bags; R33 = routine sample, 3rd of 3 bags; Field Duplicate = FD0, [FD1, FD2 are used for compound bags of field duplicates] etc.), digits 4 to 5 are the SCS state code, 6 to 8 are the SCS county code, digit 9 is a dash, digits 10 to 11 are the county pedon number and digits 12 to 13 are the horizon number. Upper and lower split horizons will be identified by the depth designations (written after the horizon designation). A "U" or an "L" can also be written after the horizon depth to help to differentiate these samples for the preparation laboratories. The Set ID is a four-digit number beginning with 0. The field sampling crews are assigned the following ideal set of 100 Set ID numbers for sampling in the Northeast:

| 100-199 | ME02 | 700-799   | MA01        |
|---------|------|-----------|-------------|
| 200-299 | ME03 | 800-899   | <b>MA02</b> |
| 300-399 | NH01 | 900-999   | CT01        |
| 400-499 | NY01 | 1000-1099 | PA01        |
| 500-599 | NY02 | 1100-1199 | VT01        |

The field sample will be passed through a 75-mm sieve. All coarse fragments remaining on the sieve can be subdivided manually into two size classes; 75 to 250 mm and ≥250 mm.

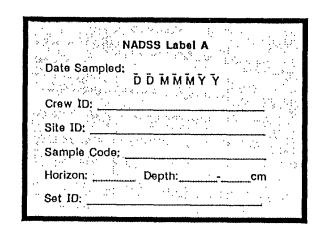


Figure 4-1. NADSS Label A.

An estimate will be made of the volume percent of material in these classes. A volume estimate of the percent coarse fragments for the 20- to 75-mm fraction will be made as well. This information will be entered on SCS Form 232 under the Rock Fragments category, Size (SZ, 1 = 20 to 75 mm, 2 = 75 to 250 mm, and  $3 = \ge 250$  mm). The preparation laboratory will determine the percent coarse fragments in the 2- to 20-mm fraction. The sieved soil <20 mm should be used as the soil sample and should be placed in the sample bag according to procedures in Section 4.2.7.

Section 4.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 5 of 5

# 4.3 Delivery

The soil samples should be delivered to the pre-assigned soil preparation laboratory. The following preparation laboratory assignments are for the Northeast sampling crews. Preparation laboratories for the southeastern sampling crews will be assigned at a later date.

Field Crew

Maine
New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts
Connecticut, Rhode Island
New York, Pennsylvania

Preparation Laboratory

University of Maine University of Massachusetts University of Connecticut Cornell University

Samples will be kept as cold as possible in the field by storage in coolers with Blue Ice gel packs until delivery to the preparation laboratory. Temperature checks in the cooler should be made routinely to keep a 4 °C ambient air temperature. These readings should be recorded in the field logbook. Due to the location of some watersheds, some samples may not be delivered to the preparation laboratory until three to four days after they are sampled. Each field sampling crew will deliver field samples as soon as possible after collection. If major problems occur, notice must be given as soon as possible to the QA Officer. Every effort should be made to get the field samples to the preparation laboratory as soon as possible.

Great care should be taken not to drop or puncture sample bags in transport to the preparation laboratory.

# 5.0 Soil Preparation Laboratory

# 5.1 Scope

The samples will be received by the preparation laboratory supervisor. The supervisor will check the samples for spillage or other problems and to be certain that each sample has an accompanying NADSS Label A (Figure 4-1). Field samples and all QC samples will be logged in on NADSS Form 101 (Figure 5-1). The QC samples will be randomly assigned in the batch by the preparation laboratory. One set of samples will be defined as the total number of samples taken in one day by one crew. Each set will include one field duplicate, because one horizon per day is to be sampled twice as a field duplicate. Two pre-assigned audit samples will be randomly inserted into each batch. In addition, one sample per batch will be randomly selected, divided into two samples, and tracked as the preparation laboratory duplicate (PLD). One batch including routine field samples, field duplicates, a preparation laboratory duplicate, and two audit samples will contain a maximum of 42 samples. Therefore, the number of sets combined to make one analytical batch depends on the number of samples in each set. The total number of samples in the combined sets should not exceed 39.

# 5.2 Sample Storage

The samples will be sealed and stored at 4 °C at all times when not involved in processing. This procedure will greatly reduce microbial decomposition of organic matter without alteration of the crystalline structures. If the samples cannot be dried immediately at the preparation laboratory, they should be placed in storage until processing.

# 5.3 Sample Preparation

After the samples are received, sample numbers are assigned on NADSS Form 101. The samples should be air-dried and sieved (<2 mm) (see Section 5.3.1). Care must be taken to be certain that the soils are not separated from their labels during the air-drying process. The percentage of coarse fragments (>2 mm) must be weighed as specified in Section 5.3.2 and the percent coarse fragments reported on NADSS Form 101. The coarse-fragment fraction should be labeled and set aside. If the qualitative test for inorganic carbon is positive, the analysis for total inorganic carbon must be performed on this sample, and the 2- to 20-mm fraction must be crushed and shipped to the analytical laboratory. The results of the determination of effervescence are recorded on NADSS Form 101.

# 5.3.1 Sample Drying and Mixing

#### 5.3.1.1--

The soil is laid out on a tray and allowed to air-dry at room temperature until constant weight is achieved (30 to 35 °C is ideal). Constant weight is defined as that time when a subsample does not change by more than 2.5 percent moisture content on two consecutive days. Constant weight must be determined before the sieving process is started. The drying period could range from two days to seven or more days, depending on organic matter content and particle size of the sample.

Date Received D D M M M Y Y

By Data Mgt. \_ \_ \_ \_ National Acid Deposition Soil Survey (NADSS) Form 101

|                       |   | Batch ID   |  |              |                                       |  | *************************************** | ***************************************          |
|-----------------------|---|--|--|--------------|---------------------------------------|--|---|--|
|                       |   | Crew ID  |  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
|                       |   | Prep Lab ID                                      |  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
|                       |   | Lab Set Sent                                     | : to   |              |                                       |  |   |  |
|                       |   | Date Shipped                                     | ı  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| Set ID                |   |  |  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
|                       | <del>, ,                                   </del> |  | -  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| Date Sa               |   |  | -  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| Date Re               | ceived  |  | _  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| Date Pr               | ep Completed                                      |  | _  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| No. of                | Samples   |  | ł  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| Sample                |   | <u> </u>   | 7  | Coarse       | 7.5-                                  | dried  | Tnow                                    | Bulk   |
| No.                   | Site  | Sample   | Set  | Fragments    | Mois                                  |  | Inorg.                                  |  |
|                       | ID  | Code   | ID   | * Tagmenca   |                                       | ture<br>8  | Carbon                                  | Density  |
| İ                     | 1   |  | **   | CF           | W                                     | RSD  | (IC)                                    | g/cc   |
| ŀ                     |   |  |  | Cr           | "                                     | KSD  | Y=yes                                   |  |
|                       |   |  |  | L            | L                                     |  | N=no                                    |  |
| 01                    |   |  |  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| 02                    |   |  |  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| 03                    |   |  |  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| 04                    |   |  |  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| 05                    |   |  | 1  |              | <u> </u>                              |  |   |  |
| 06                    |   |  | 1  |              |                                       |  | i                                       |  |
| 07                    |   |  | 1  |              | <u> </u>                              |  |   |  |
| 08                    |   |  | T  |              |                                       |  | <del></del>                             |  |
| 09                    |   | 1  |  |              |                                       |  |   | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·            |
| 10                    |   |  | <del>                                     </del> |              | <del> </del>                          |  |   |  |
| 11                    |   |  |  |              |                                       | -  |   |  |
| 12                    |   | <del> </del>                                     | <del> </del>                                     |              | <del></del>                           |  |   |  |
| 13                    |   |  | 1  |              |                                       | <b></b>  |   |  |
| 14                    | T   |  |  |              |                                       | <del> </del>                                     |   |  |
| 15                    |   |  | <del> </del>                                     |              | <del> </del>                          | <del></del>                                      |   |  |
| 16                    |   |  | 1  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| 17                    |   | <del> </del>                                     | 1  |              | <del> </del>                          |  |   |  |
| 18                    |   |  | <del>                                     </del> |              | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | ·  |   |  |
| 19                    |   |  | <del></del>                                      |              | <del> </del>                          | <del>                                     </del> | <del> </del>                            |  |
| 20                    |   | <del> </del>                                     | <del> </del>                                     |              | <del> </del>                          |  |   |  |
| 21                    |   | <del>                                     </del> | <del> </del>                                     |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| 22                    |   |  | <del></del>                                      |              | <del> </del>                          |  |   |  |
| 23                    |   |  | <del> </del>                                     |              | <del> </del>                          |  |   |  |
| 24                    |   |  | +  | ļ            | -                                     | <del> </del>                                     |   |  |
| 25                    |   | ****   | 1  |              |                                       | <del></del>                                      |   | ļ  |
| 26                    |   |  | ┼  |              |                                       |  |   | <del> </del>                                     |
| 27                    |   | <del> </del>                                     | 1  | <del> </del> |                                       |  |   | <del>                                     </del> |
| 28                    |   | <del></del>                                      |  |              |                                       |  |   | <u> </u>   |
| 29                    | † · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·           |  | <del> </del>                                     |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| 30                    | ·   | <del> </del>                                     | 1  |              | <del> </del>                          |  |   | <del>                                     </del> |
| 31                    |   |  | <del> </del>                                     |              |                                       |  |   | <del> </del>                                     |
| 32                    |   | <del> </del>                                     | <del> </del>                                     |              |                                       | -  |   | 1  |
| 33                    | <u> </u>  | <del></del>                                      | +-   |              | -                                     |  |   |  |
| 34                    |   | -  | +  |              | <del> </del>                          |  |   | <del> </del>                                     |
| 35                    |   |  | <del> </del>                                     |              |                                       | <u> </u>   |   |  |
| 36                    |   | <del> </del>                                     | <del>                                     </del> |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| 37                    | <u> </u>  | <del> </del>                                     | <del> </del>                                     | <b></b>      | ļ                                     |  |   |  |
| 38                    |   | <del> </del>                                     | <del>                                     </del> | <del></del>  | ļ                                     |  |   | <b>}</b>   |
| 39                    |   |  |  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| 40                    |   |  | 1  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| 40                    |   | <del> </del>                                     | ļ  |              |                                       |  |   |  |
| 41                    |   |  | ļ  |              | <u> </u>                              |  |   |  |
| 42                    | L   | L  | <u> </u>   |              | <u> </u>                              |  |   |  |
| Signature<br>Comment: | e of Preparation                                  | n Laboratory                                     | Super  | visor:       |                                       |  |   |  |

Figure 5-1. National Acid Deposition Soil Survey (NADSS) Form 101.

Section 5.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 3 of 8

#### 5.3.1.2--

After the soil is air-dried, place the complete sample in the orginal sample bags and store them at 4 °C until further preparation laboratory analysis is performed.

#### 5.3.1.3--

After the soil is air-dried, place the complete sample minus the calibration sample in the original sample bags and store them at 4 °C until preparation laboratory analysis.

# 5.3.2 Coarse Fragment Determination

#### 5.3.2.1--

The fragment size class that will be separated during this procedure is the class that is small enough to pass through a 20-mm sieve. Coarse fragments larger than 20 mm will be determined in the field.

#### 5.3.2.2--

The total sample should be weighed and quantitatively passed through a clean, dry, square-holed, 2-mm sieve to segregate coarse fragments (2 mm to 20 mm) from the soil. The material larger than 2 mm should be saved until the test for inorganic carbon is complete. The soil that passed through the sieve (0 to 2 mm) should be placed in a sealed container if further processing will not occur at this time.

#### 5.3.2.3--

The amount of soil that did not pass through the sieve should be weighed and divided by the inital amount and multiplied by 100. This percentage is then recorded as percent coarse fragments (%CF). The coarse fragments (2 to 20 mm) must be saved until the qualitative test for inorganic carbon has been completed.

#### 5.3.3 Soil Mixing

After the soil has passed through a 2-mm sieve and %CF is determined, quantitatively load the soil into the Jones type 3/8-inch riffle splitter. The soil should be passed through the riffle splitter at least seven times. Before reloading the splitter each time, level the soil on the tray to ensure random particle addition. It is best to remove the 1-kg subsample for the analytical laboratory at this time. If the 1-kg subsample is to be removed later, the entire sample must again be passed through the riffle splitter before a well-mixed subsample can be removed. After completion of the soil preparation procedures, the soils should be placed into a new inner plastic liner supplied by EPA-LV. Complete NADSS Label B (Figure 5-2) and place it on the exterior of the inner bag that is to be sent to the analytical lab.

Remove NADSS Label A from the original field bag and tape it into a preparation laboratory notebook, grouped in order by set number and batch number. Record the date either on the label or below it. Initial the label by writing partially on the label and partially on the page. This procedure will help to replace labels that may become unattached. The air-dried soil in the inner bag should be sealed with a plastic-coated wire twist.

Section 5.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 4 of 8

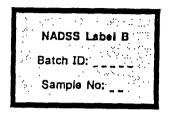


Figure 5-2. NADSS Label B.

At this point, the exterior canvas bag will have the field coding written on it and the inner bag will show the batch number and sample number.

The field coding on the outer plastic bag should be crossed out so it is not legible, and the batch number and the sample number should be written on the exterior with indelible ink. The soil should be packed tightly in the boxes supplied by EPA-LV. After all subsamples have been removed for shipment to the analytical laboratories, the remaining sample should be placed in a clean plastic bag and stored at 4 °C. The samples should be clearly and permanently labeled with NADSS Label B and stored in such a manner that they are easily retrievable if necessary.

# 5.3.4 Qualitative Test for Inorganic Carbon

#### 5.3.4.1--

Carbonates are used frequently as criteria to differentiate soil series. A qualitative test for carbonates will be performed on the ≤2-mm size class. If the test for effervescence is positive, the coarse-fragment size class (2 to 20 mm) will be crushed and sent to the analytical laboratory for quantitative total inorganic carbon analysis. For the following procedures, the word "soil" is defined as that material which has been air-dried and passed through a 2-mm sieve.

#### 5.3.4.2--

Place 1 g of soil in a porcelain spot plate. Saturate the soil with deionized (DI) water and stir with a glass rod to remove entrapped air. Place plate under a binocular microscope.

#### 5.3.4.3--

Add 4 N HCl by dropwise addition and observe through microscope for effervescence.

#### 5.3.4.4--

Repeat this procedure with another 1 g of soil from the sample.

#### 5.3.4.5--

Record in laboratory notebook for each subsample whether effervescence was or was not noted.

Section 5.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 5 of 8

#### 5.3.4.6--

If effervescence was noted either time, inorganic carbon must be determined for this sample.

#### 5.3.4.7--

If effervescence was observed, the coarse-fragment fraction from this soil sample should be crushed to pass an 80-mesh sieve. A 100-gram subsample should be prepared using a riffle splitter, and should be shipped separately (without the soil sample) for inorganic carbon determination. The subsample should be packaged in a plastic bag and labeled with NADSS Label B. Coarse-fragment subsamples do not require storage at 4 °C until shipment to the analytical laboratory.

# 5.4 Shipment of Subsample to Analytical Laboratories

# 5.4.1 Shipping Method

Subsample will be shipped to the analytical laboratories by batch. Each box shipped must contain copies of NADSS Shipping Form 102 (Figure 5-3). The results of the bulk density determination and percent coarse fragment determinations must also appear on Form 102. If Form 102 indicates a positive inorganic carbon test, the coarse fragment sample must be shipped to the analytical laboratory for total inorganic carbon analysis. As indicated on the bottom of NADSS Form 101, the canary, pink, and gold copies should be enclosed with each sample box. The white copy should be sent to the Sample Management Office (SMO) after a photocopy is made to keep at the preparation laboratory. The address for shipment to SMO is:

National Acid Deposition Soil Survey Sample Management Office P.O. Box 818 Alexandria, Virginia 22313

The shipping carrier to be used and specific shipping protocols required to ship samples to the analytical laboratory will be supplied to the preparation laboratory by the QA Manager.

#### 5.4.2 NADSS Form 101

NADSS Form 101 is used to combine field sets into an analytical set. A maximum of six sets should be combined to achieve a maximum of 39 routine and field duplicate samples. In addition, there will always be one preparation laboratory duplicate (PLD) and two audit samples per batch for a combined maximum number of 42 samples. If four to six sets are used for one batch, the second section of Form 101 should be modified to fit, ignoring the predrawn lines and utilizing space as necessary. Air-dried moisture (or column "w") should be the final moisture content used to verify air-dryness, reported to two decimal places. NADSS Form 101 should be completed in black ink and should not contain any mistakes, crossouts, or white out. The form should be mailed within 24 hours after the batch has been shipped to the analytical laboratory. The white copy should be sent to ORNL at the following address:

Oak Ridge National Laboratory (ORNL) P.O. Box X Building 1505, Room 343 Oak Ridge, Tennessee 37831

Section 5.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 6 of 8

The gold copy should be sent to the EPA ERL-C, in care of:

Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis 200 S.W. 35th Street Corvallis, Oregon 97333

The pink copy should be sent to EPA EMSL-LV, in care of:

Lockheed Engineering and Sciences Company, Inc. 1050 E. Flamingo Road, Suite 120 Las Vegas, Nevada 89109

# 5.5 Sample Receipt by the Analytical Laboratory from the Preparation Laboratory

The analytical laboratory should immediately compare the samples and the data on Form 102. Record should be made as to when the samples were received, and their condition upon receipt. All missing samples should be noted. This information should be recorded on Form 102 and initialed by the recipient.

If NADSS Form 102 is incomplete, immediately notify SMO at (703) 557-2490. The gold NADSS Form 102 should be kept as the analytical laboratory. The canary NADSS Form 102 should be sent to SMO at the address indicated in Section 5-4 and the pink copy should be mailed to EMSL-LV at the following address:

Lockheed Engineering and Sciences Company, Inc. 1050 E. Flamingo Road, Suite 120 Las Vegas, Nevada 89109

The recipient should check to be sure that all samples for inorganic carbon analysis have been included.

# 5.6 Shipment of Mineralogical Samples

Horizons to be subsampled for mineralogical analysis will be designated by the QA Manager. Approximately 10 percent of the pedons sampled will require this analysis. Subsamples (100 g EMSL-LV. NADSS Label B (Figure 5-2) will be placed on those bottles and shipping Form 115 (Figure 5-4) will be included in each box shipped. Sample receipt protocol by the mineralogical laboratory is the same as that specified in Section 5-4 for analytical examples.

Section 5.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 7 of 8

| Date Received | D | D | М | М | М | Y | Y |  |
|---------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| By Data Mgt.  | _ |   | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ |  |

National Acid Deposition Soil Survey (NADSS) Form 102

| Ol O2 | Air-dri<br>Moistur<br>W | - 1         | Inorganic<br>Carbon | Coarse Fragments             |
|-------|-------------------------|-------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
|       |                         |             | (IC)                | Shipped?<br>(Check Y if yes) |
|       |                         |             | Y=yes N=no          |                              |
| 02    |                         | ******      |                     |                              |
|       |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 03    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 04    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 05    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 06    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 07    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 08    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 09    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 10    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 11    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 12    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 13    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 14    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 15    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 16    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 17    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 18    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 19    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 20    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 21    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 22    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 23    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 24    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 25    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 26    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 27    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 28    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 30    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 31    |                         |             | <del></del>         |                              |
| 32    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 33    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 34    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 35    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 36    |                         | ~           |                     |                              |
| 37    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 38    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 39    | <del></del>             |             |                     |                              |
| 40    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 41    |                         |             |                     |                              |
| 42    | <del></del>             |             |                     |                              |
|       | of Preparation          | on Laborato | rv Manager:         |                              |

Figure 5-3. National Acid Deposition Soil Survey (NADSS) Form 102.

Section 5.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 8 of 8

Date Received D D M M M Y Y By Data Mgt.

National Acid Deposition Soil Survey (NADSS) Form 115

| rep Lab ID                          |   | D D M M M Y Y |
|-------------------------------------|---|---------------|
| nalytical Lab ID                    | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·   | Date Recieved |
|                                     |   | Date Shipped  |
| Sample No.                          | Batch ID                                | Sample No.    |
|                                     |   |               |
| 01                                  |   |               |
| 02                                  |   |               |
| 03                                  |   |               |
| 04                                  |   |               |
| 06                                  |   |               |
| 07                                  |   |               |
| 08                                  |   |               |
| 09                                  | 30.5                                    |               |
| 10                                  |   |               |
| 11                                  | 1                                       |               |
| 12                                  |   |               |
| 13                                  |   |               |
| 14                                  |   |               |
| 15                                  |   |               |
| 16                                  |   |               |
| 17                                  |   |               |
| 18                                  |   |               |
| 20                                  |   |               |
| 21                                  |   |               |
| 22                                  |   |               |
| 23                                  |   |               |
| 24                                  |   |               |
| 25                                  |   |               |
| 26                                  |   |               |
| 27                                  |   |               |
| 28                                  |   |               |
| 29                                  |   |               |
| 30                                  |   |               |
| 31                                  |   |               |
| 33                                  | *************************************** | -             |
| 34                                  |   |               |
| 35                                  |   |               |
| 36                                  |   |               |
| 37                                  |   |               |
| 38                                  |   |               |
| 39                                  |   |               |
| 40                                  |   |               |
| 41                                  |   |               |
| 42                                  |   | 1774144       |
| Signature of Preparation Laboration | oratory Manager:                        |               |
| Comments:                           |   |               |

Figure 5-4. National Acid Deposition Soil Survey (NADSS) Form 115.

# 6.0 Summary of Physical and Chemical Parameters and Methods

# 6.1 Physical Parameters

#### 6.1.1 Particle Size

Soil-texture analysis is routinely determined for soil characterization and classification purposes. The standard pipet method is used. Particles greater than 20 mm will be determined by field sieving and weighing; coarse fragments (2 to 20 mm) will be determined at the soil preparation laboratory and soil less than 2 mm will be determined at the analytical laboratory. This analysis will be performed on all mineral horizon samples, including the additional samples from each impervious layer less than 3 cm thick.

# 6.1.2 Mineralogy

Clay minerals are identified by X-ray diffraction, whereas light and heavy minerals of the finesand fraction are identified by optical mineralogy. Mineralogical identification is necessary to: (1) help characterize the soil, (2) provide an indication of weathering rates, and (3) yield information about minerals weathered from the parent material. This analysis will be performed only on samples selected by ERL-C.

# 6.1.3 Specific Surface Area

Specific surface is measured because this is highly correlated with anion adsorption/desorption, cation exchange capacity, and the type of clay mineral. The method specified is saturation with ethylene glycol monomethyl ether. This analysis will be performed on all mineral horizon samples.

#### 6.2 Chemical Parameters

#### 6.2.1 pH

pH is a measurement of free hydrogen ion activity. pH measurements are determined in three different soil extracts. The extracts are DI water 0.01 M CaCl<sub>2</sub>, and 0.002 M CaCl<sub>2</sub> in a 1:2 ratio in a mineral soil and a 1:5 ratio for organic horizon samples. These analyses will be performed on all samples.

# 6.2.2 Total Carbon and Total Nitrogen

Total carbon and total nitrogen are critical parameters due to their close relationship with microbial decomposition of soil organic matter. The method specified is oxidation followed by thermal conductivity detection using an automated CHN analyzer. These analyses will be performed on all samples.

# 6.2.3 Inorganic Carbon

Quantification of inorganic carbon is necessary due to the inherent ability of carbonates to buffer acid inputs. If carbonates exist, they will be determined by manometric detection of evolved  $CO_2$  after extraction with a strong acid, or by an automated CHN analyzer. Carbonates are not expected because the soils being sampled are generally thought to be acid sensitive. Inorganic carbon analyses will be performed only on soil samples reacting positively to a test for effervescence upon the addition of drops of 4  $\underline{N}$  HCI.

#### 6.2.4 Extractable Sulfate

The amount of extractable sulfate will indicate the sulfate saturation of the anion exchange sites. Extractable sulfate is determined in two different extracts (DI water and 500 mg/L P). Extractable sulfate is then determined by ion chromatography. These analyses will be performed on all samples.

# 6.2.5 Sulfate Adsorption Isotherms

The ability of soil to adsorb sulfate is perhaps the most important parameter in determining if a soil unit will show direct or delayed response to added sulfate deposition. Isotherms will be developed by placing soil samples in six separate sulfate solutions for 1 hour and determining the amount adsorbed by analysis of the solution for sulfate after contact with the solution. These isotherms will represent the maximum sulfate adsorption capacity of the soil at the given conditions. Sulfate adsorption isotherms will not be required for organic horizons, but will be performed on all mineral horizons.

#### 6.2.6 Total Sulfur

Total sulfur is measured because of its close relationship with extractable sulfate, and to inventory existing sulfur levels to monitor future inputs of anthropogenic sulfur. An automated method involving sample combustion followed by titration of evolved sulfur will be used.

# 6.2.7 Cation Exchange Capacity

Cation Exchange Capacity (CEC) is a standard soil characterization parameter and indicates the ability of the soil to adsorb exchangeable bases. Therefore, it is well correlated with soil buffering capacity. Ammonium chloride (NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, pH 7.0), and ammonium acetate (NH<sub>4</sub>OAc, pH 7.0), and 0.002 M calcium chloride (CaCl<sub>2</sub>) will be used as the replacement solutions. The extractable bases (Na<sup>+</sup>, K<sup>+</sup>, Ca<sup>2+</sup>, Mg<sup>2+</sup>) will then be determined on the extracts by flame atomic absorption spectroscopy (AA) or inductively-coupled plasma-atomic emission spectroscopy (ICP). These analyses will be performed on all samples.

# 6.2.8 Exchangeable Acidity

Exchangeable acidity is a measure of the remaining exchangeable soil cations that are not part of the base saturation. Two methods are specified. One employs a BaCl<sub>2</sub>--triethanolamine extraction and the other employs a KCl extraction. The former extraction quantifies total exchangeable acidity and the latter quantifies effective exchangeability acidity. Aluminum acidity is also determined in the KCl extract by analyzing the extract for Al by AA or ICP. These analyses will be performed on all samples.

Section 6.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 3 of 3

#### 6.2.9 Extractable Iron and Aluminum

Iron oxides and aluminum oxides are highly correlated to sulfate adsorption and are important in standard soil characterization. Extractable Fe and Al are determined by AA or ICP in three different extracts. Each extract yields an estimate of a specific Al or Fe fraction. The three extracts (and fractions) are sodium pyrophosphate (organic Fe and Al), acid-oxalate (organic plus sesquioxides), and citrate-dithionite (nonsilicate Fe and Al). These analyses will be performed on all samples.

#### 6.2.10 Lime and Aluminum Potential

Lime potential is used as an input for certain models instead of base saturation; it is defined as pH-1/2 pCa. Another characteristic shown to be important to watershed models is the relationship of pH to solution  $Al^{3+}$  levels, defined as the aluminum potential  $(K_A)$ , which is 3pH-pAL. The method involves extracting the soil with 0.002 m CaCl<sub>2</sub> and determining pH, Ca, and Al in the extract. The remaining base cations,  $Na^+$ ,  $K^+$ , and  $Mg^{2+}$ , as well as exchangeable Fe, will also be determined on this extract because of expediency and comparability to other extracts. These analyses will be performed on all samples.

# 7.0 Bulk-Density Determination

# 7.1 Scope

Bulk density is defined as the weight per unit volume of a soil. Bulk density generally ranges between 1.0 and 2.0 g/cm³. For organic soils, bulk density commonly ranges from 0.050 to 0.355 g/cm³. Bulk density will be determined by the field collection and Saran coating of clods from each horizon, followed by weighing the clods by the preparation laboratories.

This method was chosen because of routine use in the field, relative ease of performance, and elimination of compaction problems inherent in core methods. It will be impossible to collect clods from certain horizons. Relationships between the particle-size distribution and surface area data and pre-existing data may be used to derive values for missing data. The laboratory method was provided by the Soil Morphology Laboratory, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, Massachusetts.

# 7.2 Apparatus and Materials

#### 7.2.1 Dow Saran S310 Resin

The Saran resin dissolves readily in acetone or methylethyl ketone. Acetone is preferred and will be used because it is readily available and less toxic.

# 7.2.2 Coating Solution

The coating solution will be prepared by the preparation laboratories and will be supplied to the field crews. To prepare the solution, calculate the amount of acetone required to make a 1:4 solution of resin to acetone. If a 1:7 solution is desired, the stock solution can be diluted with a precalculated volume of acetone. The resin is not readily soluble in acetone and will require mixing. Because the solvent is flammable, care should be taken during mixing. The solution should be made in an exhaust hood. A nonsparking electric stirrer should be used. If a high-speed stirrer is used, the resin dissolves in about 1 hour. If the solution must be made in the field, mix well and often with a wooden stick. Metal paint cans will be supplied as mixing containers, although other containers may be used as well. Some plastic containers are unsuitable because the acetone dissolves the plastic. Containers that can be tightly closed are most desirable because the solution is highly volatile and rapid evaporation will result in excesses of acetone being used. If the solution becomes thick, add more acetone until the desired consistency is reached.

#### 7.3 Procedure

Collect natural clods (three per horizon) of about 100 cm³ to 200 cm³ in volume (approximately fist-size). Remove a piece of soil larger than the clod from the face of a sampling pit with a spade. From this piece, prepare a clod by gently cutting or breaking off protruding peaks and material sheared by the spade. If roots are present, they can be cut conventiently with scissors or side cutters. In some soils, clods can be removed directly from the face of the pit with a knife or spatula. No procedure for taking samples will fit all soils; the procedure must be adjusted to meet the conditions in the field at the time of sampling.

Section 7.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 2 of 5

The clods are tied with fine copper wire or placed in hairnets and suspended from a rope or string, then hung like a clothesline. The clods themselves should be labeled with some type of tag that can be attached to the hairnet or string. The label should record the sample code, horizon, and replicate number. Moisten clods with a fine mist spray. The suspended clods are dipped by raising a container of the dipping mixture upward to submerse each clod momentarily. The number of times a clod is dipped should be recorded on the label. The Saran-coated clods should be allowed to dry for 30 minutes or longer.

# 7.3.1 Transport of Clods

Clods should be sealed in the presupplied 6" × 8" plastic bags, then placed in the compartmentalized clod boxes. The top (inner face) of the clod box should be labeled with the same information on the clod tag (i.e., sample code, horizon, replicate number, and how many times the clod was dipped in the Saran). Great care must be taken to ensure that the clods are not broken or damaged during handling and shipping. Space not occupied by the clods in each compartment should be filled with packing material; for example, leaves, newspaper, or extra plastic bags. Clod boxes may be reused by removing the old labels.

# 7.3.2 Preparation Laboratory Handling of Clods

Upon receipt of clods, labels should be removed and placed in the Bulk Density Preparation Laboratory Notebook. However, the clods must be relabeled with the appropriate sample number to retain identity. Notes should be made in the notebook regarding the condition of the clod upon arrival, how many times the clod was dipped in Saran in the field, label clarity, and the time of receipt. At the end of the project, this notebook should be submitted to Lockheed-EMSCO (EPA EMSL-LV) Data Audit Supervisor.

## 7.3.3 Bulk-density Procedure

#### 7.3.3.1--

Weigh the clod and record this weight in the laboratory notebook as m<sub>t</sub>.

#### 7.3.3.2--

Dip the clod briefly in a Saran:acetone (1:6 w/w) solution and allow the coating to dry.

#### 7.3.3.3--

Reweigh the clod and record this weight as m<sub>2</sub>.

#### 7.3.3.4--

Repeat steps 7.3.3.2 and 7.3.3.3 as needed to obtain an impervious coating. Record weights after each coating as  $m_3$ ,  $m_4$ , etc.

#### 7.3.3.5--

Place a 1-L beaker that contains 600 to 700 mL of de-aired and distilled water of known temperature (recorded as T) on balance pan and record the tare weight as  $M_{\rm A}$ .

Section 7.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 3 of 5

#### 7.3.3.6--

Suspend the clod over the beaker, lower it gently into the water until totally submerged, then record the weight displayed on the balance as M<sub>B</sub>.

#### 7.3.3.7--

Suspend the clod in a convection oven at 105°C for 48 hours.

#### 7.3.3.8--

Remove the clod from the oven, weigh it, and record this weight as MoD.

#### 7.3.3.9--

Place the clod in an appropriate container and put the container into an electric muffle furnace for 2 hours at 400°C.

#### 7.3.3.10--

After the sample has cooled, weigh the contents of the container and record this as m<sub>t</sub>.

#### 7.3.3.11--

Pass the sample through a 2-mm sieve and obtain the weights of coarse fragments and the fine-earth fraction. Record these as M<sub>CF</sub> and m<sub>fc</sub>, respectively.

#### 7.3.3.12 Calculations--

$$BD_{FM} = \frac{M_{OD} - [M_{CF} + M_{TS} (0.85)]}{\frac{M_{V}}{r H_{2}O_{T}} - \frac{M_{CF}}{2.65} + \frac{M_{TS}}{1.30}}$$

where

 $BD_{\text{FM}}$  is the field moist bulk density.  $M_{\text{OD}}$  is the oven-dry weight of the clod (Step 7.3.3.8).  $M_{\text{CF}}$  is the weight of the coarse fragments in the clod (Step 7.3.3.11).

M<sub>TS</sub> is the weight of the air-dry Saran coating which may be estimated as follows:

$$M_{TS} = \frac{X (m_a - m_1)}{a - 1}$$

where

X is the total number of coatings (field + lab).

a is the number of laboratory coatings.

ma is the clod weight after the final coating.

m, is the initial clod weight after unpacking.

 $M_v$  is equal to  $M_{B-M}A$  (from steps 7.3.3.5 and 7.3.3.6).

Section 7.0 Revision 2 Date: 9/85 Page 4 of 5

 $^{\rm r}$  H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>T</sub> is the density of water obtained from Table 7.1 for the temperatures measured in Step 7.3.3.5.

The final value to be reported on Form 101 is the coarse-fragment, and Saran-weight corrected value.

# 7.3.3.13 Assumptions--

Four assumptions are made concerning the bulk-density procedure:

- The weight of the individual, field-applied Saran coatings is equivalent to that applied in the laboratory, and the Saran has not infiltrated the clod.
- The specific gravity of the coarse fragments is 2.65.
- The specific gravity of air-dried Saran is 1.30.
- The Saran loses 15 percent of its weight upon oven drying at 105°C for 48 hours.

Table 7-1. Specific Gravity of Water

| °C | 0      | 1      | 2      | 3      | 4       | 5      | 6      | 7      | 8      | 9      |
|----|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 0  | 0.9999 | 0.9999 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000  | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9999 | 0.9999 |
| 10 | 0.9997 | 0.9996 | 0.9995 | 0.9994 | 0.9993  | 0.9991 | 0.9990 | 0.9988 | 0.9986 | 0.9984 |
| 20 | 0.9982 | 0.9980 | 0.9978 | 0.9976 | 0.99973 | 0.9971 | 0.9968 | 0.9965 | 0.9963 | 0.9960 |
| 30 | 0.9957 | 0.9954 | 0.9951 | 0.9947 | 0.9944  | 0.9941 | 0.9937 | 0.9934 | 0.9930 | 0.9926 |
| 40 | 0.9922 | 0.9919 | 0.9915 | 0.9911 | 0.9907  | 0.9902 | 0.9898 | 0.9894 | 0.9890 | 0.9885 |
| 50 | 0.9881 | 0.9876 | 0.9872 | 0.9867 | 0.9862  | 0.9857 | 0.9852 | 0.9848 | 0.9842 | 0.9838 |
| 60 | 0.9832 | 0.9827 | 0.9822 | 0.9817 | 0.9811  | 0.9806 | 0.9800 | 0.9795 | 0.9789 | 0.9784 |
| 70 | 0.9778 | 0.9772 | 0.9767 | 0.9761 | 0.9755  | 0.9749 | 0.9743 | 0.9737 | 0.9731 | 0.9724 |
| 80 | 0.9718 | 0.9712 | 0.9706 | 0.9699 | 0.9693  | 0.9686 | 0.9680 | 0.9673 | 0.9667 | 0.9660 |
| 90 | 0.9653 | 0.9647 | 0.9640 | 0.9633 | 0.9626  | 0.9619 | 0.9612 | 0.9605 | 0.9598 | 0.9591 |

<sup>\*</sup>Also the density or unit weight of water in grams per milliliter.

# 8.0 Crews, Supplies, and Equipment

# 8.1 Scope

Field crews will consist of four SCS employees. The lead soil scientist in each crew will supervise all field operations. This person will be responsible for selecting each sampling site in the field and for documenting all field data. The following is a list of supplies needed for each field crew.

- 35-mm camera (macro lens or wide-angle lens).
- ASA-400 film and Kodak premailer envelopes.
- 2 clinometers.
- Munsell color charts.
- Magnetic compass.
- Hand lens.
- 2 brass sieves (3/4", 10 mesh, 19 mm)\*.
- 2 thermometers\* (centigrade).
- 5 coolers\*.
- 40 Blue Ice gel packs\*.
- Stereoscope.
- 0.1 N HCl or 10% 4 N HCl and drop bottle.
- Visqueen 6-mil sheets, (4' x 4')\*.
- Spring scale (optional; use an exterior canvas bag for weighing).
- Plastic inner sample bags (20/day)\*.
- Canvas exterior sample bags (20/day)\*.
- NADSS Label A (30/day)\*.
- Orange flagging (1 roll/day)\*.
- Yellow marker flags (20/day)\*.
- 5 indelible-ink markers\*.
- SCS Form SOI 232 and clipboard.

- Field logbook\*.
- 1-gallon paint can with lid\*.
- Saran\* and acetone (Note: acetone must be purchased locally).
- Hairnets (1 per clod)\*.
- 6" x 8" plastic bags, 1 mil (enough for one per clod)\*.
- 24-cell, 17.50" x 11.94" x 3.75" boxes (1 box per day reusable)\*.
- 2" x 2" blank vinyl labels (attach to box for individualized clod compartments)\*.
- Hand auger (for sampling Histosols; optional, may use spades).
- Staplers\*.
- Saran Dow-310 resin\*.

An asterisk indicates that the item will be shipped by EPA EMSL-LV. The amount of equipment sent to each preparation laboratory is based on the number of crews assigned to that laboratory.

The crews from New York and Pennsylvania (4) will receive supplies from the Cornell University soil preparation laboratory. Maine crews (2) will receive supplies from the University of Maine at Orono Soil Preparation Laboratory. Rhode Island-Connecticut (1), New Hampshire (1), and Massachusetts crews will receive supplies from the University of Massachusetts at Amherst, Massachusetts.

# 8.2 Equipment Notes

#### 8.2.1 Coolers and Gel Packs

For each day of sampling, five coolers and eight gel packs per cooler should be stored in the field sampling vehicle. The gel packs should be frozen in advance. Enough frozen gel packs should be stored in a storage cooler to replace softened gel packs if ambient temperature in the cooler falls below 4 °C. Coolers containing gel packs and soil samples should be taped shut before transit. Two thermometers per crew will be provided for routine temperature checks on coolers containing gel packs and soil samples. Temperature readings to the nearest tenth of a degree should be recorded in the field notebook. Time and date should also be recorded in the notebook.

# 8.2.2 Marker Flags and Flagging

Upon arrival at the sample site, orange flagging should be tied to surrounding shrubbery at eye level. This flagging is necessary in case of return visit to the pedon. The 21-inch stake yellow flags should be placed at least 6 inches into the ground at the four corners of the pedon before leaving the sample site.

# 8.2.3 Visqueen Plastic Sheets

Visqueen plastic sheets (4' x 4', 6 mil) will be provided for each crew. All soil materials less than 20 mm should be sieved into these sheets. The sample is then poured into the inner plastic, prelabeled sample bag. If by visual estimate the 2 to 20 mm particle-size class exceeds 50 percent by volume, two 5.5-kg samples should be bagged and sieved for that sample. A canvas sheet may be substituted for the 4' x 4' plastic sheet, but the use of this should be noted in the field notebook and should be immediately reported to the EPA EMSL-LV QA officer.

#### 8.2.4 Field Notebook

Daily activities of the field crew should be logged in a field notebook. Each day's activities should be recorded; specific problems, solutions, and other miscellaneous notes should be recorded, along with location and identification of each sample pedon. These field notebooks will be submitted to Lockheed-ESC (EPA-EMSL-LV) in care of:

Lockheed Engineering and Sciences Company 1050 E. Flamingo Road, Suite 120 Las Vegas, Nevada 89109

# 9.0 References

- USDA/SCS. 1983. *National Soils Handbook*. Part 600-606. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington D.C. 609 pp.
- USDA/SCS. 1984. SCS National Soil Survey Manual. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington D.C.
- Mausbach, M., R. Yeck, D. Nettleton, and W. Lynn. 1983. *Principles and Procedures for Using Soil Survey Laboratory Data*. National Soil Survey Laboratory. Lincoln, Nebraska. 130 pp.
- USDA/SCS. 1972. Soil Survey Laboratory Methods and Procedures for Collecting Soil Samples. Soil Survey Investigations Report No. 1. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington D.C. 68 pp.

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 1 of 22

# Appendix A Field Data Forms and Legends

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 2 of 22

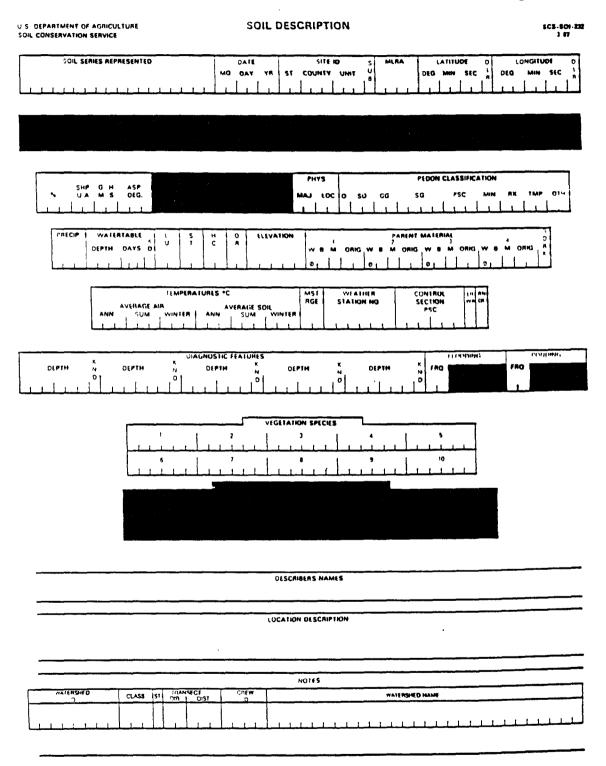


Figure A-1. Form SCS-SOI-232 (page 1 of 4).

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 3 of 22

|          | DEPTH | IORIZON<br>DESIGNATION   | THICK<br>NESS | T         |         | JRY CC | DLOR                |          |          |              |                     | -          | 401     | ST C     | 010       | ۸        |   |     | Т | 1EXTUR      |             |
|----------|-------|--------------------------|---------------|-----------|---------|--------|---------------------|----------|----------|--------------|---------------------|------------|---------|----------|-----------|----------|---|-----|---|-------------|-------------|
|          | UPPER | D                        |               |           |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           |          | v | , , | c |             |             |
|          | LOWER | S MASTER C LETTER SUFFIX | 141.12 (1/14) | ٥٥        | `       |        | <b>₩</b> U <b>€</b> |          | <b>V</b> | H            | C                   | `          |         | ы        | UE        |          |   | ١ ١ | - | CLASS       | 40 <b>0</b> |
| 1        |       | 1                        | • 1 1         | +         |         | 1      |                     |          |          | _            | +                   | +          | 1       | <br>1    | 1         |          | + | +   | _ | 111         |             |
|          |       |                          | -             | - -       |         |        |                     | -        |          | 7            | +                   | Ţ          | H       | 1        | 4         | 1        | + | +   | 7 |             |             |
| 2        |       |                          |               | 1         |         |        |                     |          |          | $\downarrow$ | 1                   | +          |         | _        | $\exists$ | 1        | 1 | 7   | 7 |             |             |
| 3        |       |                          |               | 1         |         |        |                     | <u></u>  |          | #            | #                   | 1          |         | _        | <u>-</u>  |          | # | #   | 7 | 111         |             |
| <u>3</u> |       |                          | 9 1           |           |         |        |                     | 1        |          | #            | 1                   | 1          |         | لب<br>لب |           |          | # | #   |   | 1.1.1       |             |
| 4        |       | 1                        | 0 1           | $\pm$     |         |        |                     | 1        |          | $\exists$    |                     | 1          |         |          |           | <br>!    | _ | 1   |   | 111         | +++         |
|          | 1 1   |                          | ¢ ; ;         | +         | 1 1     | 1 1    | <u>1 1</u>          | <u> </u> | _        |              | $\pm$               | _ <u>_</u> |         |          | L<br>L    |          |   |     |   | <del></del> |             |
| 5        |       |                          | 6             | Ţ         |         |        | 1.1                 | 1        |          |              | 7                   | -          | -       |          | لــا      |          | + | -   |   |             |             |
| <u> </u> |       |                          | <u>•    </u>  | 1         |         |        |                     | 1_       |          |              | 4                   |            | I       | L        |           | Ш        | - | -   |   | 111         | 1.1         |
| 6        | 11    |                          | ٠ ا           |           | ++      |        |                     | 1        |          |              | $\rightrightarrows$ |            | +       | <u></u>  |           |          |   | 4   |   | 111         |             |
| 7        | 1-1-  |                          | 0             | $\pm$     | 1       |        |                     | 1        |          |              | $\exists$           |            | $\perp$ | <u> </u> | <u> </u>  |          |   |     |   | 111         |             |
|          |       |                          | • 1           |           |         |        | <u> </u>            | L        | $\vdash$ |              |                     |            |         | <u> </u> | <u></u>   |          |   |     |   | 1 1 1       |             |
| 8        |       |                          | <b>b</b> 1    |           |         |        | 11                  | <u> </u> |          |              |                     |            | +       |          | <u></u>   |          |   |     |   | 111         |             |
| 9        | 1_1_  | 1                        | 0             | $\dashv$  | +       | 1      | 1 1                 | +        | $\vdash$ |              | $\vdash$            | _          | $\pm$   | _        | <u>L</u>  |          |   | _   |   |             | 111         |
|          |       | 111111                   | € <u>1</u>    |           |         | 1      | 1 1                 |          | -        | H            | $\Box$              |            | +       | 1        | <u> </u>  | <u> </u> |   |     |   |             |             |
| 10       | 1     | 1 , , , , , ,            | <b>8</b>      | 4         | 1       | 1      | 11                  | 1        | F        |              |                     | _          | -       | 1_       | 1         |          |   |     |   |             |             |
|          |       |                          |               |           | <u></u> | REE FO | RM NO               | IES      | <u></u>  | <u> </u>     |                     |            |         |          |           |          |   | _   |   |             |             |
|          |       | SAMPLE<br>HUMBERS        | BULK DENSIT   |           |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     | HOP        | ZON     | NOTE     | 3         |          |   |     |   |             |             |
| 1        |       |                          |               | -         |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           |          |   |     |   |             |             |
| 2        | 2     |                          |               | 7         |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           |          |   |     |   |             |             |
| 3        |       |                          |               | İ         |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           |          |   |     |   |             |             |
| 4        |       |                          |               |           | ·       |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           |          |   | _   |   |             |             |
|          | 5     |                          |               | -         |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           |          |   |     |   |             |             |
| _        |       |                          |               | 1         |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           | _        |   |     |   |             |             |
|          | 3     |                          |               | 7         |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           |          | _ |     |   |             |             |
| 7        |       |                          |               | 1         |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           |          |   |     |   |             |             |
| 8        | 3     |                          |               | _         |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           |          |   |     |   |             |             |
|          | 9     |                          |               | $\exists$ |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           |          |   |     |   |             |             |
| 10       |       |                          |               |           |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           | _        |   |     |   |             |             |
|          |       |                          | 1 1           |           |         |        |                     |          |          |              |                     |            |         |          |           |          |   | _   | _ |             |             |

Figure A-1. Continued (page 2 of 4).

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 4 of 22

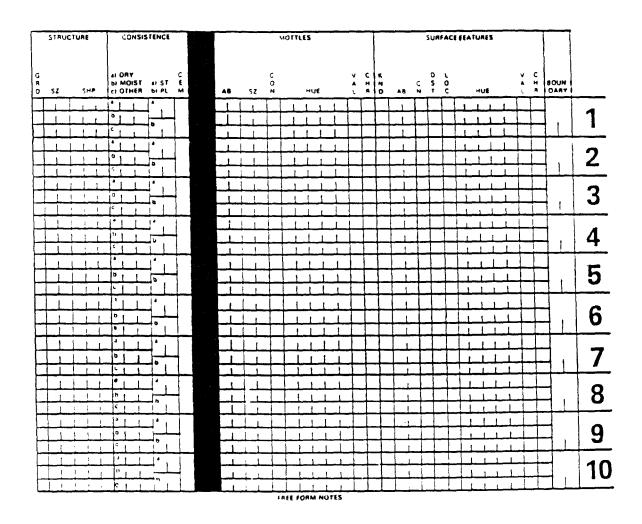


Figure A-1. Continued (page 3 of 4).

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 5 of 22

| EFFER-<br>VES-<br>CENCE | MEA         | IELD<br>ASURED<br>PERTIES                        | MEA   | IELD<br>ASURED<br>PERTIES                        | \$ # F Z | ,    | A  | OOTS   |              |  |          | 201            | 163         |  | coi  | NCENTA   | ATI  | ONS  | £ F  | 4OCK   |                 | ·  | ROCI   |                 |
|-------------------------|-------------|--|---|--|----------|------|--|--|--------------|--|----------|----------------|-------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|-----------------|--|--|-----------------|
| C A E                   | KND         | AMOUNT   | KND   | AMOUN  | £        | 0020 | ат   | sz   | ι<br>0       | SH   | P        | QΤ             | sz          | CN   | KND  | <b>a1</b>  | S<br>H<br>P                                      | 5Z   | × 7 D  | ~  | A<br>N S<br>D 2 |  | 4  | 4<br>4 5<br>0 2 |
|                         | ٥           | 1.1  | 1   | 1  | T        | П    |  |  | $\Gamma$     |  | i        |                |             | L  |  |  |  |  | 1  |  | $\prod$         |  |  |                 |
| ļ                       | CIL         |  |   | 111  | 4        | 1    |  |  |              |  |          |                |             | 1_   |  |  |  |  |  |  |                 |  |  |                 |
|                         |             | سلسلسا   | 1   | +  | 4_       | ┺    |  |  |              |  |          |                |             | LI.  |  |  |  |  | 1  |  |                 |  |  |                 |
|                         | 21          |  |   |  | 4        | 1    |  | 11   | 1            | L  |          |                | 1           |  |  |  |  | ,  |  | 11   |                 | 11   | 1  |                 |
|                         | <u> </u>    |  |   | 1-1-1  | ┙        |      |  | ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ           | 1            | Ш  |          | L              | _1          | 1  | 1  | 1  |  | 1  |  |  |                 |  | للل  | $\bot \bot$     |
|                         |             |  |   | ـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ          | _        | ┺    | 1  | 1 1  | 1            | Ш  | ĺ        | _1             | _1          |  | 1  |  |  |  |  | $\perp$  |                 | 14   | 11   |                 |
|                         | P 1         |  | 1   |  | _        | 1    |  |  |              | L  |          |                |             |  |  | 1_1_   | <u> </u>   | 1_   |  |  |                 | حل   | 1  |                 |
|                         | C IL        |  |   |  | 4        | 1    |  | LI.  |              |  |          | ı              | L.          | L L  |  |  |  |  |  | L  |                 |  |  | $\perp \perp$   |
| بسلب                    |             | 1_1_   | Ш.  |  |          | 丄    | $\perp$  | L  |              |  |          | 1              |             |  |  |  |  |  | 1  |  |                 |  | ٠  |                 |
|                         | 21          |  | <u> </u>  |  | 4        |      | 1  | 1 1  | L            |  | Ī        |                |             |  |  |  |  | 1  |  |  |                 |  | 1 1  |                 |
|                         | <u> </u>    |  |   |  | _        | 1    |  | 1  | 1            |  |          | 1              |             | 1  | 1  | 1  |  | 1  |  | $\prod_{\mathbf{L}}$                             | $T \perp$       |  | 1  |                 |
| 11.                     |             |  |   | 1::  |          |      |  | i  | 1            |  | 1        |                | 1           | 1  |  | 1  |  |  |  |  |                 |  |  |                 |
|                         | 21          | 1-1-1  |   | نبلل   |          | T    |  | i  | 1            | 1  | 1        | 1              | ,           | 1  |  | 1  |  | -  | ,  | 11   | $\top$          | $T_{T}$  | 1  | 11              |
|                         | c L         | 1.1  |   |  |          | 1    | ī  | 1  | T            |  | i        |                | 1           |  |  | 1 1  |  | 1  |  | 1  |                 | Ti   | 1  |                 |
|                         |             | 1.1.   |   |  | L        | İ    |  | 1  | 1            |  | $\dashv$ | 1              | 1           | 1  | <del>                                     </del> |  |  |  | 1  | 1  | 1               |  | 1  |                 |
|                         | 9 1         | 1 1  |   | 1 1  |          | Т    | 1  | ,  | T            |  | _        |                |             | -  |  | -  |  |  |  | 1  | $\top$          | 1  |  |                 |
|                         | CIL         | 1 1  |   |  | 7        | 1    | -  |  | 1            | 1  | _        |                |             |  | <del>                                     </del> | <del></del> -                                    | -  |  |  | +-   | ++              | <del>                                     </del> | 1  | +-+-            |
| 111                     |             | 1 ,  | +   |  | -        | 1    | <del>                                     </del> | <del>                                     </del> | +-           | ╁╾┼  | +        | <del>-</del> } |             | <del>                                     </del> | <del>                                     </del> |  | -  |  | <del> !-</del>                                   | +-:-   | ╅╅              | ╅┼   | ┼┼   | ++              |
|                         | P           |  |   | 1 1  |          |      | <b>!</b>   | <del></del>                                      | +-           |  | +        | <del>-</del>   | <del></del> |  |  |  | Н  | <del></del>                                      | -  | +-   | +-+             | +  | +  | 11              |
|                         | C IL        |  | 1   |  | 7        | 1    | <b> </b>   | <del>                                     </del> | +-           | <del>                                     </del> | +        |                |             | <del>                                     </del> | <del>                                     </del> |  |  |  | <del></del>                                      | <del>                                     </del> | ++              | +-:-   | +  | +++             |
| 11                      |             |  |   | 1 1  | 7        | 1    | <b> </b>   | <del>                                     </del> | ┿            | ╁╌┼  | +        | <del></del>    | <del></del> |  | ┼┼╌  |  | $\vdash$   | <del></del>                                      | ┝┼╴  | +  | +-+-            | ++   | + :  | +-+-            |
|                         | 0 1         | 1 1  |   | 1 1  | _        | 1    | ,  | <del>                                     </del> | +            | <del>                                     </del> | +        | <del></del>    |             |  | <del>                                     </del> |  | -  | <del>                                     </del> | <del>                                     </del> | +  | ++              | +  | <del>                                     </del> | ++              |
|                         | C IL        | 1 1  | 1   |  | 7        | 1    | <b>-</b>   |  | <del>†</del> | ١;   | +        | <del>-</del> - | <del></del> | <del></del>                                      | <del>                                     </del> | -  |  | <del>                                     </del> |  | +-   | ++              | + :  | 1  | 11              |
|                         |             | 1 1  |   | 1 1  | 7        | 1    | <u> </u>   | <del>                                     </del> | 1-           | +  | +        | <del></del> -  |             | <del>                                     </del> | <del>                                     </del> |  | -  | <del>                                     </del> |  | +-   | +               | +  | +  | ++              |
|                         | PI          | , ,  |   | 1  | $\top$   | T    | T :-   | 1  | +-           | 1  | -        | <del></del> -  | <del></del> | <del>                                     </del> | ++   | -  | -  | <del>                                     </del> | <del>                                     </del> | +  | +-+-            | + -  | †  | 11              |
|                         | CIL         | 1  | 1   | 1 1  | 1        | 1    | 1+   | <del>                                     </del> | ┿            | ╁  | +        |                |             | <del>                                     </del> | <del>                                     </del> | <del>                                     </del> | -  | <del></del>                                      | Η.   | ┿┷   | +-              | +-   | ┼┼   | +-+             |
| 11                      | -           | 1 1  | +   | <del>                                     </del> | -        | 1    | <b> </b>   | <del>                                     </del> | +-           |  | +        | <del></del>    |             |  | <del>                                     </del> | <del>                                     </del> | -  | <del>                                     </del> | ┞┼╴  | ╁╌┼╸   | ++-             | ┿  | ╅╌┼  | ++              |
|                         | P 1         |  | <del>                                      </del> | 1 .  | +-       | +    | <del>                                     </del> | <del>                                     </del> | +            | <del>                                     </del> | -        |                |             | <del>-  -</del>                                  | ┼-   |  | -  |  |  | +  | +-+-            | +  | +  | ++              |
|                         | : [L        | <del>                                     </del> |   | <del>                                     </del> | -        | 1    | }- <del></del> -                                 | <del>                                     </del> | +-           | ╁╌┤  | +        |                |             | ┝┷   | <del>                                     </del> | <del>                                     </del> | <del>                                     </del> |  | <del>                                     </del> | +  | +-+-            | +  | +  | +-+-            |
| 1 1                     | -1          |  |   | <del>                                     </del> | -        | 1    | ┝╌┷╾   | +-   | +-           | -  | -        |                | $\vdash$    |  | +  |  | -  |  |  | +  | -{{-            | <del>     </del>                                 | +  | ++              |
|                         | <del></del> | <u> </u>   |   | 1 1  |          | ۰,   | AEE FO   | <del></del>                                      | 1_           | 11   |          | _1_            | <u> </u>    |  | 1 !  | <u>'</u>   |  |  |  | سل   | <u> </u>        | 1  | 44   | _ل_ل            |

|                    | .O <b>G</b> |
|--------------------|-------------|
| WEATHER            |             |
| SET I.D.           |             |
| UNDERSTORY VEG.    |             |
| SLIDES #8 PED FACE | OVERSTORY   |
| UNDERSTORY         | LANDSCAPE   |
|                    | <del></del> |
|                    |             |
|                    |             |

Figure A-1. Continued (page 4 of 4).

# 2.0 Soil Description Codes for Form SCS-SOI-232

## 2.1 Great Group Codes

### Alfisols

#### **Aridisols**

|       | Durargid<br>Nadurargid   |       | Haplargid<br>Natrargid   |
|-------|--------------------------|-------|--------------------------|
| DARPA | Paleargid<br>Camborthid  | DORCL | Calciorthid<br>Durorthid |
| DORGY | Gypsiorthid<br>Salorthid |       | Paleorthid               |

#### Entisols

| EAQCR<br>EAQHA<br>EAQPS<br>EAQTR<br>EFLCR<br>EFLTR<br>EFLUS<br>EORCR<br>EORTR<br>EORUS<br>EPSCR<br>EPSTO | Cryaquent Haplaquent Psammaquent Tropaquent Cryofluvent Tropofluvent Ustifluent Cryorthent Troporthent Ustorthent Cryopsamment Torripsamment | EAQF<br>EAQH<br>EAQS<br>EARA<br>EFLTO<br>EFLXI<br>EORT<br>EORL<br>EORX<br>EPSQ<br>EPST | Hydraquent U Sulfaquent R Arent D Torrifluvent D Udifluvent E Xerofluvent D Udorthent D Udorthent E Xerorthent U Quartzipsamment |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  | EPSQ   | U Quartzipsamment  |
|  | Torripsamment  | EPST   | R Tropopsamment  |
| EPSUD  | Udipsamment  | EPSU   | S Ustipsamment   |
| EPSXE  | Xeropsamment   |  | •  |

### Histosols

| HHESO        | Borofibrist Luvifibrist Sphagnofibrist Borofolist Tropofolist Cryohemist Medihemist Sulfohemist | HFIME<br>HFITR<br>HFOCR<br>HHEBO<br>HHELU<br>HHESI<br>HHETR | Cryofibrist Medifibrist Tropofibrist Cryofolist Borohemist Luvihemist Sulfihemist Tropohemist |
|--------------|---|---|---|
| HHESO        | Sulfohemist   | HHETR   |   |
| <b>HSABO</b> | Borosaprist   | HSACR   | Cryosaprist   |
| <b>HSAME</b> | Medisaprist   | HSATR   | Troposaprist  |

## Inceptisols

| IANCR IANDY IANHY IANVI IAQCR IAQHL IAQHU IAQPN IAQTR IOCDU IOCEU IOCEU ITREU ITREU ITREO IUMCR | Cryandept Dystrandept Hydrandept Vitrandepth Cryaquept Halaquept Humaquept Plinthaquept Tropaquept Durochrept Eutrochrept Ustochrept Plaggept Eutropept Sombritropept Cryumbrept | IANDU IANEU IANPK IAQAN IAQFR IAQHP IAQPK IAQSU IOCCR IOCDY IOCFR IOCXE ITRDY ITRHU ITRUS IUMFR | Durandept Eutrandept Placandept Andaquept Fragiaquept Haplaquept Palacaquept Sulfaquept Cryochrept Dystrochrept Fragiochrept Xerochrept Dystropept Humitropept Ustropept Fragiumbrept |
|---|--|---|---|
| IUMCR<br>IUMHA  | Cryumbrept<br>Haplumbrept  |   |   |
| IPLPL<br>ITREU<br>ITRSO<br>IUMCR  | Plaggept Eutropept Sombritropept Cryumbrept  | ITRDY<br>ITRHU<br>ITRUS<br>IUMFR  | Dystropept<br>Humitropept<br>Ustropept<br>Fragiumbrep   |

### Mollisols

| MALAR Argialboll MAQAR Argiaquoll MAQCR Cryaquoll MAQHA Haplaquoll MBOAR Argiboroll MBOCR Cryoboroll MBONA Natriboroll MBOVE Vermiboroll MUDAR Argiudoll MUDAR Argiudoll MUDAR Argiustoll MUSAR Argiustoll MUSDU Durustoll MUSNA Natrustoll MUSVE Vermustoll MUSVE Vermustoll MXECA Calcixeroll MXEHA Haploxeroll MXEPA Palexeroll | MALNA MAQCA MAQDU MAQNA MBOCA MBOHA MBOPA MRERE MUDHA MUDVE MUSCA MUSHA MUSPA MXEAR MXEAR | Natralboll Calciaquoll Duraquoll Natraquoll Calciboroll Haploboroll Paleboroll Rendoll Hapludoll Vermudoll Calciustoll Haplustoll Paleustoll Argixeroll Durixeroll Natrixeroll |
|--|---|--|
|--|---|--|

## Oxisols

| OHUAC<br>OHUHA<br>OORAC<br>OORGI<br>OORSO<br>OTOTO<br>OUSEU | Givvsiaquox Plinthaquox Acrohumox Haplohumox Acrorthox Gibbsiorthox Sombriorthox Torrox Eutrustox | OAQUM<br>OHUGI<br>OHUSO<br>OOREU<br>OORHA<br>OORUM<br>OUSAC | Ochraquox<br>Umbraquox<br>Gibbsihumox<br>Sombrihumox<br>Eutrorthox<br>Haplorthox<br>Umbriorthox<br>Acrustox |
|---|---|---|---|
|   | Eutrustox<br>Sombriustox  | OUSHA   | Haplustox   |
| 00330   | Sombriustox   |   | -   |

## Spodosols

### **Ultisols**

| UAQAL<br>UAQOC<br>UAQPN<br>UAQUM<br>UHUPA<br>UHUSO<br>UUDFR<br>UUDPA<br>UUDRH<br>UUSHA<br>UUSPN<br>UXEHA | Albaquult Ochraquult Plinthaquult Umbraquult Palehumult Sombrihumult Fragiudult Paleudult Rhodudult Haplustult Plinthustult | UAQFR UAQPA UAQTR UHUHA UHUPN UHUTR UUDHA UUDPN UUDTR UUSPA UUSRH | Fragiaquult Paleaquult Tropaquult Haplohumult Plinthohumult Tropohumult Hapludult Plinthudult Tropudult Paleustult Rhodustult |
|--|---|---|---|
| UXEHA  | Haploxerult   | UXEPA   | Palexerult  |

### Vertisols

| VUDPE<br>VUSPE | Torrert<br>Pelludert<br>Pellustert<br>Pelloxerert | VUSCH | Chromudert<br>Chromustert<br>Chromxerert |
|----------------|---|-------|--|
|----------------|---|-------|--|

# 2.2 Subgroup Codes

| AA            | Typic             | AB    | Abruptic             |
|---------------|-------------------|-------|----------------------|
| ABO4          | Abruptic aridic   | AB08  | Abruptic cryic       |
| AB10          | Abruptic haplic   | AB14  | Abruptic ultic       |
| AB16          | Abruptic xerollic | AE    | Aeric                |
| AE03          | Aeric arenic      | AE05  | Aeric grossarenic    |
| AE06          | Aeric humic       | AE08  |                      |
| AE09          |                   | AE10  | Aeric umbric         |
|               | Aeric tropic      | ALIO  | Albaquic             |
| AE12          | Aeric xeric       |       |                      |
| AL02          | Albaquultic       | AL04  | Albic                |
| AL08          | Albic glossic     | AL10  | Alfic                |
| AL12          | Alfic arenic      | AL13  | Alfic andeptic       |
| AL16          | Alfic lithic      | AN    | Andic                |
| AN01          | Andeptic          | AN03  | Andaquic             |
| AN06          | Andic Dystric     | AN11  | Andeptic glossoboric |
| AN22          | Andic ustic       | AN24  | Andaqueptic          |
| AN30          | Anthropic         | AQ    | Aqualfic             |
| AQ02          | Aquentic          | AQ04  |                      |
| AQ06          | Aquic             | AQ08  |                      |
| AQ14          |                   | AQ16  | •                    |
|               | Aquic duric       |       |                      |
| AQ18          | Aquicdystric      | AQ24  | •                    |
| AQ26          | Aquiclithic       | AQ31  |                      |
| AQ34          | Aquollic          | AQ36  |                      |
| AR            | Arenic            |       | Arenicaridic         |
| AR03          | Arenicorthoxic    |       | Arenicplinthaquic    |
| AR06          | Arenicplinthic    | AR08  | Arenicrhodic         |
| AR10          | Arenicultic       | AR14  | Arenicumbric         |
| AR16          | Arenicustalfic    | AR18  | Arenicustollic       |
| AR22          | Argiaquic         | AR24  |                      |
| AR26          | Argic             | AR28  | <b>O</b> 1           |
| AR30          | Argicpachic       | AR32  |                      |
|               |                   | AR36  |                      |
| AR34          | Aridic            |       |                      |
| AR42          | Aridicduric       | AR50  | Aridicpachic         |
| AR52          | Aridicpetrocalcic |       |                      |
|               |                   |       | 5 10 101             |
| BO            | Boralfic          |       | Borolficlithic       |
| BO04          |                   |       | Borollic             |
| BO08          | Borollic glossic  | BO10  | Borollic lithic      |
| BO12          | Borollic vertic   |       |                      |
|               |                   |       |                      |
| CA            | Calcic            | CA04  | Calcic pachic        |
| CA06          | Calciorthidic     | CA10  | Calcixerollic        |
| CA20          | Cambic            | CH    | Chromic              |
| CH06          | Chromudic         | CR    | Cryic                |
| CR10          | Cryic lithic      | CR14  | Cyric pachic         |
| CU            | Cumulic           | CU02  |                      |
| CU04          |                   | 0002  | Carriano dalo        |
| CUU4          | Cumulic ultic     |       |                      |
| חח            | Durosaidia        | DUIDO | Durio                |
| DU            | Durargidic        | DU02  |                      |
| DU08          | Durixerollic      | DU10  |                      |
| D <b>U</b> 11 | Durochreptic      | DU12  | Durorthidic          |

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 10 of 22

| DU14<br>DY03<br>DY06   | Durorthidic xeric<br>Dystric entic<br>Dystric lithic  | DY02<br>DY04<br>DY08   | Dystric<br>Dystric Fluventic<br>Dystropeptic  |
|--|---|--|---|
| EN<br>EN06<br>EP10<br>EU02   | Entic Enticultic Epiaquicorthoxic Eutrochreptic   | EN02<br>EP<br>EU<br>EU04   | Enticlithic Epiaquic Eutric Eutropeptic   |
| FE<br>FI02<br>FL06<br>FR10<br>GL02<br>GL10<br>GL14<br>GR<br>GR04           | Ferrudalfic Fibricterric Fluventic Fragiaquic Glossaquic Glossicudic Glossoboralfic Grossarenic Grossarenicplinthic                               | FI<br>FL02<br>FL12<br>FR18<br>GL04<br>GL12<br>GL16<br>GR01                 | Glossic<br>Glossicustollic<br>Glossoboric   |
| HA<br>HA02<br>HA07<br>HA12<br>HE<br>HI<br>HI06<br>HU02<br>HU06<br>HY       | Haplaquodic Haplic Haploxerollic Hapludollic Hemic Histic Histicpergelic Humiclithic Humoxic Hydric   | HA01<br>HA05<br>HA09<br>HA16<br>HE02<br>HI02<br>HU<br>HU05<br>HU10<br>HV02 | Hapludic Haplustollic Hemicterric Histiclithic Humic Humicpergelic  |
| LE<br>LI01<br>LI06<br>LI08<br>LI10<br>LI12<br>LI14<br>LI16<br>LI20<br>LI24 | Leptic Lithic Lithicrupticalfic Lithicrupticenticerollic Lithicudic Lithicultic Lithicumbric Lithicumbric Lithicustic Lithicvertic Lithicxerollic | LI<br>LI04<br>LI07<br>LI09<br>LI11<br>LI13<br>LI15<br>LI18<br>LI22         | Limnic Lithicmollic Lithicruptic-argic Lithicruptic-entic Lithicrupticxerorthentic Lithicruptic-ultic Lithicrupticxerochreptic Lithicupticxerochreptic Lithicustollic Lithicxeric |
| МО   | Mollic  | NA06   | Natric  |
| OC<br>OR01<br>OX   | Ochreptic<br>Orthic<br>Oxic   | OR<br>OR02   | Orthidic<br>Orthoxic  |
| PA<br>PA04<br>PA08<br>PA20<br>PE01   | Pachic Pachicultic Paleustollic Paralithicvertic Pergelicruptichistic   | PA02<br>PA06<br>PA10<br>PE<br>PE02   | Pachicudic Paleorthidic Palexerollic Pergelic Pergelicsideric   |

| PE04<br>PE08<br>PE16<br>PK<br>PK12<br>PL04<br>PS | Petrocalcic Petrocalcicustollic Petroferric Placic Plaggic Plinthic Psammaquentic           | PE20<br>PK10<br>PL<br>PL06   | Petrocalcicustalfic Petrocalcicxerollic Petrogypsic Plaggeptic Plinthaquic Plinthudic Psammentic |  |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| QU   | Quartzipsammentic   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| RE<br>RU02<br>RU11<br>RU17                       | Rendollic<br>Rupticalfic<br>Rupticlithic-entic<br>Rupticultic                               |  | Rhodic<br>Rupticlithic<br>Rupticlithicxerochreptic<br>Rupticvertic                               |  |  |  |  |
| SA<br>SA04<br>SO04<br>SP02<br>SU                 |   | SA02<br>SI<br>SP<br>SP04   | Sapric<br>Sideric<br>Sphagnic<br>Spodic  |  |  |  |  |
| TE<br>TH06<br>TO02<br>TO06<br>TR<br>TR04         | Terric Thaptohistictropic Torrifluventic Torripsammentic Tropaquodic Tropic                 | TO10   | Thaptohistic Torrertic Torriorthentic Torroxic Tropeptic Typic                                   |  |  |  |  |
|  | Udorthentic<br>Ultic<br>Umbric<br>Ustertic  | UD10<br>UM<br>US<br>US04   | Umbreptic  |  |  |  |  |
| VE   | Vermic  | VE02   | Vertic   |  |  |  |  |
| XE<br>XE04                                       | Xeralfic<br>Xeric   | XE02<br>XE08   | Xerertic<br>Xerollic   |  |  |  |  |
| Slop   | e Shape Codes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1 con  | 1 convex 2 plane 3 concave 4 undulating 5 complex   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Ge   | Geomorphic Position Codes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 02 st<br>22 st                                   | rmmit crested hills<br>noulder crested hills<br>noulder headslope<br>ackslope crested hills | <ul><li>summit interfluve</li><li>shoulder interfluve</li><li>shoulder noseslope</li><li>backslope headslope</li></ul> |  |  |  |  |  |

2.3

2.4

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 12 of 22

33backslope sideslope43backslope noseslope24footslope headslope34footslope sideslope44footslope noseslope05toeslope crested hills25toeslope headslope35toeslope sideslope

### 2.5 Slope Aspect Codes

1 northeast 2 east 3 southeast 4 south 5 southwest 6 west 7 northwest 8 north

#### 2.6 Pedon Position Codes

1 on the crest 2 on slope and crest 3 on upper third 4 on middle third 5 on lower third 6 on a slope 7 on a slope and depression 8 in a depression 9 in a drainageway

### 2.7 Regional Landform Codes

A coastal plains
E lake plains
F river valley
G glaciated uplands
I bolson
L level or undulating uplands
N high hills
U plateaus or tablelands
N hills
V mountain basin
F river valley
glaciofluvial landform
mountains or deeply disected plateaus
P piedmonts
U plateaus or tablelands
V mountain valleys or canyons

### 2.8 Local Landform Codes

AA depression A fan D dome or volcanic cone C cuesta or hogback E escarpment F broad plain H abandoned channel G crater J moraine I hillside or mountainside L drumlin K kamefield N low sand ridge--nondunal M mesa or butte Q playa or alluvial flat P flood plain R upland slope S sand dune or hill U terrace--outwash or marine T terrace--stream or lake pediment W swamp or marsh

#### 2.9 Particle Size Codes

002 not used

X salt marshZ back barrier flat

005ashy007ashy over cindery008ashy over loamy013ashy over loamy-skeletal019ashy over medial009ashy-skeletal

Y barrier bar

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 13 of 22

|            | cindery<br>cindery over medial-skeletal  | 006<br>004 | cindery over loamy<br>cindery over sandy or sandy-skeletal   |
|------------|--|------------|--|
| 116<br>120 | clayey clayey over fragmental clayey over loamy-skeletal clayey-skeletal   | 124<br>118 | clayey over fine-silty<br>clayey over loamy<br>clayey over sandy or sandy-skeletal<br>clayey-skeletal over sandy |
| 084<br>088 | coarse-loamy<br>coarse-loamy over sandy or sandy-skeletal<br>coarse-silty<br>coarse-silty over sandy or sandy-skeletal                         | 086<br>090 | coarse-loamy over fragmental coarse-loamy overy clayey coarse-silty over fragmental coarse-silty over clayey     |
| 102<br>100 | fine<br>fine-loamy over clayey<br>fine-loamy over sandy or sandy-skeletal<br>fine-silty over clayey<br>fine-silty over sandy or sandy-skeletal | 098<br>106 | fine-loamy<br>fine-loamy over fragmental<br>fine-silty<br>fine-silty over fragmental                             |
| 036        | fragmental   |            | ,  |
|            | loamy<br>loamy-skeletal<br>loamy-skeletal over fragmental  | 054        | loamy over sandy or sandy-skeletal<br>loamy-skeletal over clayey<br>loamy-skeletal over sand                     |
| 014<br>018 | medial<br>medial over clayey<br>medial over loamy<br>medial over sandy or sandy-skeletal   | 016<br>020 | medial over cindery<br>medial over fragmental<br>medial over loamy-skeletal<br>medial over thixotropic           |
| 066<br>044 | sandy<br>sandy over clayey<br>sandy-skeletal<br>sandy-skeletal over clayey   | 064        | sandy or sandy-skeletal<br>sandy over loamy<br>sandy-skeletal over loamy   |
| 034        | thixotropic<br>thixotropic over loamy<br>thixotropic over sandy or sandy-skeletal  | 032        | thixotropic over fragmental<br>thixotropic over loamy-skeletal<br>thixotropic-skeletal                           |
| 134        | very fine  |            |  |

# 2.10 Mineralogy Codes

| 02 | not used                   | 04  | calcareous         | 05 | carbonatic           |
|----|----------------------------|-----|--------------------|----|----------------------|
| 09 | chloritic                  | 07  | clastic            | 80 | coprogenous          |
| 10 | diatomaceous               | .12 | ferrihumic         | 14 | ferritic             |
|    | gibbsitic                  | 20  | glauconitic        | 22 | gypsic               |
| 24 | halloysitic                | 26  | illitic            |    | illitic (calcareous) |
| 28 | kaolinitic                 | 30  | marly              |    | micaceous            |
| 34 | mixed                      | 35  | mixed (calcareous) | 37 | montmorillonitic     |
| 38 | montmorillonitic (calcared |     | ,                  |    |                      |

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 14 of 22

40 oxidic 42 sepiolitic 44 serpentinitic 46 siliceous 50 vermiculitic

2.11 Reaction Codes

02 not used 04 acid 08 dysic 10 euic 12 nonacid 14 noncalcareous

2.12 Temperature Regime Codes

02not used04frigid06hyperthermic08isofrigid10isohyperthermic12isomesic14isothermic16mesic18thermic

2.13 Other Family Codes

02 not used 04 coated 05 cracked 06 level 08 micro 12 ortstein

14 shallow 15 shallow and coated 17 shallow and uncoated

16 sloping 20 uncoated

2.14 Kind of Water Table Codes

1 flooded 2 perched 3 apparent 4 ground

2.15 Landuse Codes

C cropland
E forest land grazed
G pasture land and native pasture

I cropland irrigated
F forest land not grazed
H horticultural land

L waste disposal land N barren land

P rangeland grazed
R wetlands
C wetlands
C wetlands drained
C urban and built-up land

2.16 Permeability Codes

1 very slow 2 slow 3 moderately slow 4 moderate

5 moderately rapid 6 rapid 7 very rapid

2.17 Drainage Codes

1 very poorly drained2 poorly drained3 somewhat poorly drained4 moderately well drained

5 well drained 6 somewhat excessively drained

7 excessively drained

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 15 of 22

### 2.18 Parent Material Weathering Codes

1 slight 2 moderate 3 high

### 2.19 Parent Material Mode of Deposition Codes

A alluvium E eolian S eolian-sand D glacial drift G glacial outwash T glacial till L lacustrine W loess V local colluvium M marine O organic X residuum

R solid rock Y solifluctate U unconsolidated sediments

H volcanic ash

### 2.20 Parent Material Origin Codes

### Mixed Lithology

Y0 mixed Y1 mixed-noncalcareous Y2 mixed-calcareous **Y3** mixed mixed-igneous-metamorphic and sedimentary Y5 mixed-igneous and metamorphic Y6 mixed-igneous and sedimentary **Y7** mixed-metamorphic and sedimentary

### Conglomerate

CO conglomerate C1 conglomerate-noncalcareous

C2 conglomerate-calcareous

### Igneous

10 igneous **I**1 igneous-coarse 12 igneous-basic 13 igneous-intermediate igneous-granite **I**5 igneous-fine igneous-basalt 17 igneous-andesite igneous-acid igneous-ultrabasic

### Metamorphic

M0 metamorphic M1 gneiss

M2 metamorphic-acidic M3 metamorphic-basic M5 schist and thyllite M7 metamorphic-basic M9 quartzite M4 serpentine M6 metamorphic-acidic

M8 slate

### Sedimentary

SO sedimentary S1 marl S2 glauconite

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 16 of 22

### Interbedded Sedimentary

B0 interbedded sedimentary
B2 limestone-sandstone
B4 limestone-siltstone
B5 limestone-shale
B6 sandstone-siltstone
B7 shale-siltstone

#### Sandstone

A0 sandstone A1 sandstone-noncalcareous
A2 arkosic-sandstone A3 other sandstone
A4 sandstone-calcareous

#### Shale

H0 shale H1 shale-noncalcareous H2 shale-calcareous

#### Siltstone

T0 siltstone T1 siltstone-noncalcareous T2 siltstone-calcareous

#### Limestone

L0limestoneL1chalkL2marbleL3dolomiteL4limestone-phosphaticL5limestone-arenaceousL6limestone-argillaceousL7limestone-cherty

#### Pyroclastic

P0 pyroclastic P1 tuff
P2 tuff-acidic P3 tuff-basic
P4 volcanic breccia P5 breccia-acidic
P6 breccia-basic P7 tuff-breccia
P8 aa P9 pahoehoe

### Ejecta Material

E0 ejecta-ash
E2 basic-ash
E3 basaltic-ash
E4 andesitic-ash
E5 cinders
E6 pumice
E7 scoria

### Organic Materials

K0 organic
 K1 mossy materiał
 K2 herbaceous material
 K3 woody materiał

K4 wood fragments K6 charcoal K5 logs and stumps

K7 coal

K9 other organics

### 2.21 Moisture Regime Codes

AQ aquic moisture regime AR aridic moisture regime TO torric moisture regime PU perudic moisture regime US ustic moisture regime UD udic moisture regime

XE xeric moisture regime

### 2.22 Erosion Codes

0 none 1 slight 2 moderate 3 severe

#### 2.23 Runoff Codes

0 none 1 ponded 2 very slow 3 slow 4 moderate 5 rapid 6 very rapid

# 2.24 Diagnostic Feature Codes

A anthropic M mollic H histic P plaggen Z duripan O ochric U umbric D durinodes L lithic contact Q albic C calcic N natric W paralithic contact R argic T argillic B cambic G gypsic X oxic E petrocalcic J petrogypsic K placic I sombric Y salic S spodic F fragipan V sulfuric

### 2.25 Horizon Codes

#### Color Location Codes

3 rubbed or crushed 0 unspecified 1 ped interior 2 ped exterior

#### Texture Classes

С CIND cinders clay CL COS coarse sand clay loam COSL coarse sandy loam CSCL coarse sandy clay loam diatomaceous earth CE coprogenous earth DE FB fibric material fine sand FS FSL FM fine sandy loam fragmental material GYP G gravel gypsiferous earth ICE ice or frozen soil loam L LCOS loamy coarse sand LFS loamy fine sand loamy sand LVFS . loamy very fine sand

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 18 of 22

| MARL<br>MPT<br>PDOM<br>PEAT<br>SG<br>SCL<br>SP<br>SIL<br>SICL<br>U<br>VAR<br>VFSL | marl mucky peat partially decomposed organics peat sand and gravel sandy clay loam sapric material silt loam silty clay loam unknown texture variable very fine sandy loam | MUCK<br>OPWD<br>S<br>SC<br>SL<br>SI<br>SIC<br>UDOM<br>UWB<br>VFS<br>WB | muck oxide protected weathered bedrock sand sandy clay sandy loam silt silty clay undecomposed organics unweathered bedrock very fine sand weathered bedrock |
|---|--|--|--|
|   |  |  |  |

### Texture Modifiers

| AY<br>BYX<br>CBV<br>CNV<br>CRC<br>CY<br>FLX<br>GRF<br>GY<br>MK | ashy extremely bouldery very cobbly very channery coarse cherty cindery extremely flaggy fine gravelly gritty mucky | BY<br>CB<br>CBX<br>CNX<br>CRV<br>FL<br>GR<br>GRV<br>GYV | bouldery cobbly extremely cobbly extremely channery very cherty flaggy gravelly very gravelly very gritty peaty | BYV<br>CBA<br>CN<br>CR<br>CRX<br>FLV<br>GRC<br>GRX<br>GYX<br>SHX | very bouldery angular cobbly channery cherty extremely cherty very flaggy coarse gravelly extremely gravelly extremely gritty extremely shaly |
|--|---|---|---|--|---|
|  | •   |   |   |  |   |

### Grade of Structure

| 1 | weak        | 2 | moderate          | 3 | strong              |
|---|-------------|---|-------------------|---|---------------------|
| 4 | very strong | 5 | weak and moderate | 6 | moderate and strong |

### Size of Structure

| EF extremely fine | VF       | very fine       | FF | very fine and fine     |
|-------------------|----------|-----------------|----|------------------------|
| F fine            | FM       | fine and medium | М  | medium                 |
| MC medium and c   | oarse CO | coarse          | CV | coarse and very coarse |

## Structure Shape

| CDY<br>GR<br>PL | angular blocky<br>cloddy<br>granular<br>platy<br>wedge |  | blocky<br>columnar<br>lenticular<br>prismatic | CR<br>MA | subangular blocky<br>crumb<br>massive<br>single grain |
|-----------------|--|--|---|----------|---|
|-----------------|--|--|---|----------|---|

### Dry Consistence

L loose S soft SH slightly hard

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 19 of 22

VH very hard EH extremely hard hard SWH somewhat hard Moist Consistence FR friable loose VFR very friable FI firm EFI extremely firm VFI very firm Other Consistence WSM weakly smeary MS SM smeary moderately smeary brittle very rigid В R rigid VR very weakly cemented WC CO weakly cemented VWC uncemented SD semideformable SC strongly cemented I indurated deformable Stickiness VS very sticky SO nonsticky SS slightly sticky S sticky **Plasticity** PO nonplastic SP slightly plastic plastic VP very plastic Cementation Agent S silica H humus I iron L lime X lime and silica Mottle Abundance Codes F few C common M many Mottle Size Codes 1 fine 2 medium 3 coarse Mottle Contrast Code F faint D distinct P prominent Surface Features A skeletans over cutans B black stains C chalcedony on opal D clay bridging G gibbsite coats I iron stains K intersecting slickensides L lime or carbonate coats M manganese or iron-manganese stains O organic coats P pressure faces Q nonintersecting slickensides

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 20 of 22

S skeletans (sand or silt) T clay films U coats X oxide coats Surface Feature Amount Codes V very few F few C common M many Surface Feature Continuity Codes C continuous P patchy D discontinuous Surface Feature Distinctness Codes F faint D distinct P prominent Location of Surface Features P on faces of peds H on horizontal faces of peds Z on vertical and horizontal faces of V on vertical faces of peds U on upper surfaces of peds or stones peds L on lower surfaces of peds or stones C on tops of columns M on bottoms of plates S on sand and gravel B between sand grains R on rock fragments I in root channels and/or pores F on faces of peds and in pores T throughout N on nodules Boundary D diffuse C clear G gradual A abrupt I irregular B broken S smooth W wavy Effervescence 1 slightly effervescent 0 very slightly effervescent 2 stongly effervescent 3 violently effervescent Effervescence Agent Codes I HCl (unspecified) H HCI (10%) P H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> (unspecified)  $Q H_2O_2$  (3 to 4%) Field Measured Property Kind Codes For organic materials Column 2 Column 1 R rubbed F fiber B unrubbed H herbacious

W woody

H hemic

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 21 of 22

L limnic S sapric S sphagnum >

C coprogenous earth

D diatomaceous earth F ferrihumic O other

M marly U humilluvic L sulfidic

#### For mineral materials

ON sand OI silt

OA clay

рН

рΒ pL

Bromthymol blue Lamotte-Morgan

pC Cresol red

pH Hellige-Truog pM pH meter (1:1 H<sub>2</sub>O) pN pH (0.1 M CaCl<sub>2</sub>)

pΡ Phenol red pΥ Ydrion

pS soiltex

pT Thymol blue

### Soil Moisture Codes

D dry

M moist

V very moist

W wet

### Quantity (Roots, Pores, Concretions)

VF very few

FF very few to few

F few

FC few to common

CM common to many

C common

M many

### Size (Roots, Pores, Concretions)

M micro

M1 micro and fine

V1 very fine

11 very fine and fine

1 fine 23 medium and coarse

12 fine and medium

2 medium 4 very coarse

5 extremely coarse

3 coarse 13 fine to coarse

#### Location of Roots

C in cracks

M in mat at top of horizon S matted around stones

P between peds

T throughout

#### Shape of Pores

IR interstitial

IE filled with coarse material void between rock fragment

interstitial and tubular

TC continuous tubular TE dendritic tubular

TU tubular TD discontinuous tubular TS constricted tubular

VS vesicular TP total porosity

VT vesicular and tubular

Appendix A Revision 1 Date: 9/85 Page 22 of 22

#### Kind of Concentrations

| clay bodies                | B1   | barite crystals  |
|----------------------------|--|--|
| soft masses of barite      | C1   | calcite crystals   |
| soft masses of lime        | C3   | lime concretions   |
| lime nodules               | D1   | mica flakes  |
| soft dark masses           | D3   | dark concretions   |
| dark nodules               | E3   | gibbsite concretions   |
|                            | F1   | plinthite segregations   |
| soft masses of iron        | F3   | iron concretions   |
| ironstone nodules          | G1   | gypsum crystals  |
| masses of gypsum           | H1   | halite crystals  |
| salt masses                | K2   | soft masses of carbonate   |
| carbonate concretions      | K4   | carbonate nodules  |
| nonmagnetic shot           | M2   | soft masses of iron-manganese  |
| iron-manganese concretions | M4   | rnagnetic shot   |
| opal crystals              | S2   | soft masses of silica  |
| silica concretions         | S4   | durinodes  |
| worm casts                 | T3   | insects casts  |
| worm nodules               |  |  |
|                            | soft masses of lime lime nodules soft dark masses dark nodules gibbsite nodules soft masses of iron ironstone nodules masses of gypsum salt masses carbonate concretions nonmagnetic shot iron-manganese concretions opal crystals silica concretions worm casts | soft masses of barite C1 soft masses of lime C3 lime nodules D1 soft dark masses D3 dark nodules E3 gibbsite nodules F1 soft masses of iron F3 ironstone nodules G1 masses of gypsum H1 salt masses K2 carbonate concretions K4 nonmagnetic shot M2 iron-manganese concretions M4 opal crystals S2 silica concretions S4 worm casts T3 |

## Shape of Concentrations

| С | cylindrical | D | dendritic | 0 | rounded   |
|---|-------------|---|-----------|---|-----------|
| Р | plate like  | Т | threads   | Z | irregular |

## Rock Fragment Kind Codes

| Α | sandstone            | В | mixed sedimentary rocks | Ε | ejecta            |
|---|----------------------|---|-------------------------|---|-------------------|
| F | ironstone            | Н | shale                   | I | igneous rocks     |
| K | organic fragments    | L | limestone               | M | metamorphic rocks |
| 0 | oxide-protected rock | Ρ | pyroclastic rocks       | R | saprolite         |
| S | sedimentary rocks    | T | siltstone               | Υ | mixed lithogoy    |

### Rock Fragment Size Codes

| 1 | pebbles  | 5 | channers               |
|---|----------|---|------------------------|
| 2 | cobbles  | 6 | flagstones             |
| 3 | stones   | С | 20- to 75-mm fragments |
| 4 | boulders |   | _                      |

## Appendix B

# Changes to Protocols

This appendix contains the notes assembled during the sampling and preparation laboratory training workshop that was held on August 7 and 8, 1985. The material has undergone minor editorial revisions.

Subject: Changes Discussed on August 8, 1985, During Field Training

From: Discussion Leader

To: Participants of Sampling Workshop, August 7-8, 1985

RE: Major Revisions to Field Sampling Manual

Section to be Added (Section 9) - Data Documentation Points to be included on the field data form:

#### (1) Vegetation

- The major, second, and third fields should include the dominant tree species by order of basal area.
- For recent clear-cut areas (since mapping conducted) use the code CC. Describe the dominant vegetation types prior to the clear-cut in the free-form site notes.

#### (2) Azimuth

- Azimuth values will be added in columns 13 to 17 as follows: -\_\_\_°, where "-" is the field separator, and "°" is degrees. Use leading zeros. The azimuth will be determined by the face of the pit described in a perpendicular direction based on magnetic North.
- If azimuth cannot readily be determined, as in the Histosols, use-N/A° in this field.
- (3) Site description codes
  - Local Physiographic Component (GM): Add code 00 in case other categories are not appropriate.

#### Section 1.2.1

- (1) The sentence, "The field sampling crews will consist of State Soil Conservation employees." will be replaced by "The field sampling crews will consist of soil scientists experienced in the National Cooperative Soil Survey."
- (2) Delete the second sentence, i., "at least three soil scientists."
- (3) Add to Section 1.2.1 "The field crew leader will have ultimate responsibility for placement of pedon within sampling class.

#### Section 1.2.2

(1) The RCC has established dates with the crew leaders for site visits. He will evaluate the watershed mapping and monitor the sampling. A copy of the map that was sent to Corvallis from each state is needed, as well as stereo pairs for the mapping evaluation. It was suggested that if the RCC visits a crew twice, the sampling should be done in different types, if possible.

#### Log Books

- (1) The log book will document crews' activities for each day of sampling. The set ID should be documented.
- (2) Use an indelible ink pen for logging. If an error is made, mark through the entered material and initial. Use a free form style for documenting the sampling activities.

- (3) Include the Label A information in the log book to serve as a cross-check if labeling problems should occur.
- (4) Log books will be submitted to the Data Audit Section EPA/EMSL-LV.

#### Section 4.2.8 Label A

- (1) For combined samples, use two sample codes, two horizon designations, and two depth designations for organic layers.
- (2) Mineral soil layers that cannot be sampled separately will never be combined. The leaders of the sampling teams will use their own judgment in sampling horizons <3 cm thick.
- (3) Use FD0 for field duplicate sample.

#### Section 4.2.7

(1) Two full bags of sample will be required for organic soils.

#### Section 4.2.3

(1) The subdivision of thick horizons of organic soils will not be required.

#### Section 7.3.1

(1) Add: One label should be attached to the specific clod while drying. This label is in addition to a 2-inch by 2-inch label that is placed on the inside cover of the clod box. Information necessary on these labels is the horizon, the sample code, and the replicate number.

#### Contacts

- (1) Direct questions in field to people at the EPA/EMSL-LV office.
- (2) The EPA QA manager will be auditing 5 to 10 percent of the pedons for quality control. a checklist will be developed and distributed to the sampling crews.

#### Other Miscellaneous

- (1) Label A stamps for the canvas bags will be provided by EPA/EMSL-LV.
- (2) Thin tip indelible pens to be used in completing the field data form and broad tip indelible pens for completing the labels on samples will be provided.
- (3) Interagency agreements for the preparation laboratories are being prepared.
- (4) Saran may be at MSL-LV next week for distribution to the preparation laboratories. The clod labels and boxes may not be delivered until the week of August 26, 1985.
- (5) SCS will receive a copy of all data submitted.
- (6) Send the QA manager at EMSL-LV any changes in the protocols in writing for inclusion in the next draft.
- (7) Estimated dates to begin sampling:

```
Maine - August 19
New York - August 19 (2 crews); August 26 (1 crew)
New Hampshire - August 26
Massachusetts - August 26 (1 crew); September 2 (1 crew)
```

Pennsylvania - August 19 Connecticut - August 26

# **Workshop Notes**

# Major Revisions and Clarifications to the Field Sampling Manual

| •       |          | , -   |
|---------|----------|---|
| Section | Page     | Comment   |
| 1.2.2   | 3 of 5   | The Regional Coordinator/Correlator will monitor 3 to 5 percent of the sampling sites (at least one pit per state) with the SCS state office staff.   |
| 1.2.4   | 4 of 5   | SCS state office staff will monitor one site per state with the RCC. SCS stat office staff may be involved in sampling but may not be involved in sampling during QA evaluation.  |
|         |          | Note: Three different descriptions will be generated during the joint reviews of the RCC and the SCS state office staff site visits. If the description of the sampling crew changes during the sampling, they will modify their descriptions, but the RCC and state office staff will not. |
| 2.5.1   | 8 of 20  | The five SAF vegetation cover type aggregates will be further defined and all cover types associated with each of these aggregates will be listed in the next revision of this manual.  |
| 2.8.2   | 15 of 20 | If the randomly selected site does not satisfy the criteria for sampling class and vegetation, proceed pacing 20 foot sections until an appropriate sampling class and vegetation class is located or 500 feet have been traversed.   |
|         |          | A random number table, along with instructions, will be provided in the next revision of this manual.   |
| 2.10    | 20 of 20 | Paired pedon selection and sampling30 sites were identified and assigned by ERL-C. These sites will be sampled in conjunction with the corresponding routine pedon. The location of this pedon will be determined by the crew leader using the following criteria:                          |
|         |          | (1) Establish sufficient distance to avoid disturbance from sampling of the routine pedon.  |
|         |          | (2) Use same sampling unit and vegetation as the routine pedon.   |
|         |          | (3) Use the same slope position as the routine pedon.   |
|         |          | (4) Use the same profile description and sampling protocol as the routine pedon.  |
| 3.2     | 6 of 9   | Item 23, the field carbonate test is omitted.   |
| 3.4     | 7 of 9   | For film quality consistency, all slides will be developed using prepaid Kodak mailers.   |
|         |          | Histosols will be photographed by sequential placement of the augered horizons on the surface.  |
| 3.5     | 8 of 9   | Discontinuous horizons will be sampled when considered significant by the crew leader.  |
|         | 9 of 9   | All horizons in a pedon which are greater than 3 cm will be sampled.  |

This entire section will be revised for clarification.

- 4.2.5 3 of 10 Delete the last sentence on this page which begins "The coarse fragments..."
- 4.2.7 4 of 10 The minimum amount of field sample is 5.5 Kg of less than or equal to 20 mm particle size fraction unless the estimated 2 to 20-mm size class exceeds 45 percent by estimated volume, then take two 1 gallon samples.
- 4.2.8 7 of 10 Label A The first three digits of the sample code will be assigned as follows:
  - (1) Compound field duplicate samples will be labeled FD1 and FD2.
  - (2) Compound routine samples will be labeled R12, R22, etc. (i.e., split horizon samples from horizons greater than or equal to 75 cm).
  - (3) Single routine samples will be labeled R11.
  - (4) Include depth (in cm) after the horizon name.
- 4.2.8 7 of 10 The following sets of ID ranges are assigned to the respective crews:

| 0-999     | ME01 |
|-----------|------|
| 100-199   | ME02 |
| 200-299   | ME03 |
| 300-399   | NH01 |
| 400-499   | NY01 |
| 500-599   | NY02 |
| 600-699   | NY03 |
| 700-799   | MA01 |
| 800-899   | MA02 |
| 900-999   | CT01 |
| 1000-1099 | PA01 |
| 1100-1199 | VT01 |
|           |      |

- 4.2.8 8 of 10 The second sentence read "...digits 4 to 5 are SCS state code, 6 to 8 are the SCS county code, digit 9 is a dash, digits 10 to 11 are the county pedon number, the digits 12 to 13 are the horizon number."
- 4.3 8 of 10 Delete information referring to carbonate test. Other information in this section will be incorporated into Section 4.2.7.
- 8.1 4 of 6 Items 31 and 32, the staplers and the Saran resin, will be provided to the preparation laboratories by EMSL-LV.

#### Revisions to the field data form

#### Page Comment

- 1 of 4 (1) Under Sample Number "unit" is synonymous with pedon.
  - (2) Add the day to Date.
  - (3) Add the crew ID to Describers' Names.
  - (4) Under Location Description, the first six digits of line 1 are the site ID, the seventh digit is a dash, the eighth digit is the random number point (1-5), the ninth digit is a dash, and digits ten through twelve are the sampling codes.

- 2 of 4 (5) The Dry Color will be determined when needed for classification.
- 4 of 4 (6) The three divisions under Rock Fragments correspond to the three particle size fractions:

line 1 = 2 to 75mm

line 2 = 75 to 250mm

line 3 = greater than 250mm

- 1 of 4 (7) Add Site Description Code, Physiography, Local; AA = depression.
  - (8) The following Soil Description parameters need not be completed by the field crew: Precip, Temperatures °C, Weather Station Number, ER WA, Vol LAT/TOT, Effervescence, and Pores.
- 3 of 4 (9) Mottles should be described as indicated in Chapter 4 of the Soil Survey Handbook.
  - (10) The distribution of the field data form is listed below:

Original to:

SCS

Copy 1 to:

Oak Ridge National Laboratory (ORNL)

Copy 2 to:

**EMSL-LV** 

Copy 3 to:

ERL-C

Copy 4 to:

preparation laboratory

Letters or codes exceeding the given space should be written one above the other.

NOTE: Samples should never be frozen.

## Appendix C

## Letter to Landowner

This appendix reproduces the content of the letter that was written by the technical director of the project to inform landowners about the EPA study. Reportedly, the letter was a help in gaining access to privately owned land which contained sampling locations.

September 16, 1985

#### Dear Landowner:

One of the most important environmental concerns for our nation is the potential effect of acid rain on lakes and streams. It is crucial to know how many lakes and streams are at risk of being acidified by acid rain in the near future (called, "direct response systems"), and how many are protected by the antacid actions of soil, rocks, and other parts of the watershed ("delayed response systems"). To find out, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency is looking at a large number of lakes, streams, and watersheds in the eastern United States. The Soil Conservation Service is cooperating in this project by describing and sampling selected soils on these watersheds. The soil samples will be analyzed to see how much protection from acid rain the soils give to the lakes and streams.

We are requesting your assistance in this project. Your property contains a soil type that is important for us to describe and sample. This would mean digging a hole in the ground. This hole might be up to 5 feet deep but most likely will be shallower than that. The sampling crew will describe the soil and remove a small amount for chemical analysis. Then they will fill in the hole after they are finished.

It is, of course, totally up to you whether you will permit us to sample the soil on your property. We hope you will choose to assist us in this important project. If you wish, the results of the soil description and analysis will be sent to you when they are available. Simply inform the sampling crew of your desire for this information. The results of the soil analysis will most likely be available next summer.

Thank you in advance for your consideration and cooperation in this matter.

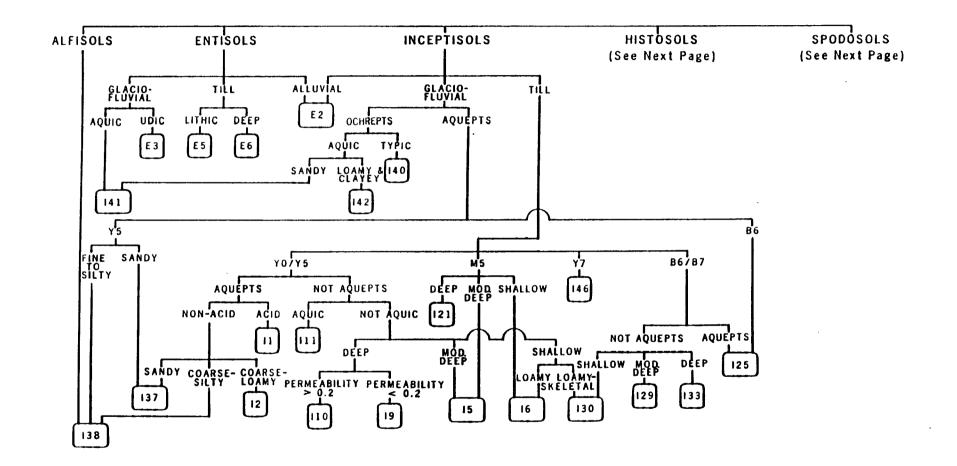
Sincerely,

Technical Director Direct/Delayed Response Project

## Appendix D

## Sampling Class Information

The figures and tables in this appendix present information about the sampling classes identified for the Northeastern Soil Survey. The figures are the flowchart which conceptualizes the categories, i.e., sampling classes, to which particular soils belong. Although this flowchart was not available to the sampling crews, it is generally believed that such a flowchart would be an aid to the sampling crews in the field.



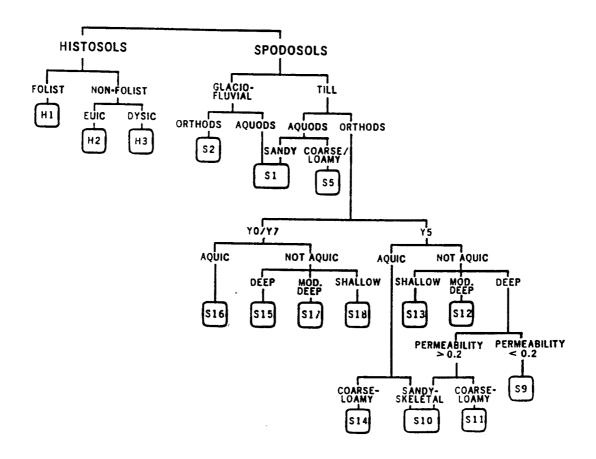


TABLE D-1. OCCURRENCE OF SAMPLING CLASSES AND LISTING OF SOILS

|                   | Occurrence |                      | ,   |  |  |  |
|-------------------|------------|----------------------|---|--|--|--|
| Sampling<br>Class | Acreage    | Number of Watersheds | Soils   |  |  |  |
| Rock              | 187.0      | 7                    |   |  |  |  |
| E2                | 913.3      | 26                   | Aquents, Basher, Charles, Fluvaquents, Medomak, Rumney, Udifluvents   |  |  |  |
| E3                | 3446.0     | 20                   | Carver, Hinckley, Plymouth, Udipsamments, Windsor                     |  |  |  |
| E5                | 1212.6     | 15                   | Schoodic, Lithic Udorthents   |  |  |  |
| E6                | 340.7      | 7                    | Udorthents  |  |  |  |
| HI                | 1550.4     | 22                   | Mahoosuc, Ricker  |  |  |  |
| H2                | 1243.5     | 18                   | Adrian, Carbondale, Carlisle, Cathro, Medisaprists, Palms, Rifle      |  |  |  |
| H3                | 7080.3     | 83                   | Beseman, Borosaprists, Chocorua, Dawson, Freetown, Greenwood, Loxley, |  |  |  |
| •••               | , , , ,    |                      | Lupton, Ossipee, Sebago, Swansea, Waskish                             |  |  |  |
| I1                | 1701.6     | 29                   | Haplaquepts, Leicester, Lyme, Neversink, Tughill                      |  |  |  |
| 12                | 7577.3     | 48                   | Brayton, Pillsbury, Ridgebury   |  |  |  |
| 15                | 2824.1     | 16                   | Chatfield, Macomber   |  |  |  |
| 16                | 2117.8     | 15                   | Hollis, Nassau, Taconic   |  |  |  |
| 19                | 1577.0     | 10                   | Broadbrook, Montauk, Paxton, Scituate                                 |  |  |  |
| 110               | 3320.7     | 12                   | Canton, Charlton, Gloucester, Narragansett                            |  |  |  |
| 111               | 2211.0     | 10                   | Rainbow, Sutton, Woodbridge   |  |  |  |
| 121               | 609.0      | 2                    | Dummerston, Fullam, Lanesboro   |  |  |  |
| 125               | 3570.3     | 17                   | Chippewa, Massena, Morris, Norwich, Rexford, Scriba, Tuller, Volusia  |  |  |  |
| 129               | 3825.7     | 17                   | Lordstown, Manlius, Oquaga  |  |  |  |
| 130               | 1645.3     | 6                    | Arnot, Insula   |  |  |  |
| 133               | 8209.5     | 17                   | Lackawanna, Mardin, Swartswood, Wellsboro, Wurtzboro                  |  |  |  |
| 137               | 493.0      | 10                   | Moosilauke, Scarboro, Searsport                                       |  |  |  |
| 138               | 3211.0     | 21                   | Biddeford, Humaquepts, Muskellunge, Peacham, Raynham, Roundabout,     |  |  |  |
| 150               | J#11.0     |                      | Swanville, Scantic, Whitman   |  |  |  |
| I40               | 1007.0     | 12                   | Agawam, Braceville, Haven, Merrimac, Riverhead, Wyoming               |  |  |  |
| I41               | 213.0      | 7                    | Deerfield, Sudbury  |  |  |  |
| 142               | 1460.0     | 7                    | Belgrade, Boothbay, Buxton, Scio, Tisbury                             |  |  |  |
| 146               | 1435.8     | 9                    | Burnham, Monarda  |  |  |  |
| S01               | 495.8      | 16                   | Naskeag, Naumburg, Pipestone  |  |  |  |
| S02               | 2580.3     | 29                   | Adams, Allagash, Colton, Croghan, Duane, Masardis, Sheepscot          |  |  |  |
| S05               | 505.3      | 13                   | Aeric Haplaquods, Typic Haplaquods                                    |  |  |  |
| S09               | 21219.1    | 70                   | Becket, Marlow, Potsdam   |  |  |  |
| S10               | 7302.6     | 24                   | Herman, Waumbek   |  |  |  |
| S11               | 6701.3     | 42                   | Berkshire, Danforth, Monadnock  |  |  |  |
| S12               | 19795.7    | 77                   | Rawsonville, Tunbridge  |  |  |  |
| S13               | 16039.2    | 82                   | Hogback, Lyman, Saddleback  |  |  |  |
| S14               | 21454.7    | 64                   | Crary, Peru, Skerry, Sunapee, Worden                                  |  |  |  |
| S15               | 1650.6     | 8                    | Bangor, Chesuncook, Enchanted   |  |  |  |
| S16               | 2085.0     | 14                   | Dixmont, Howland, Nicholville, Surplus, Telos                         |  |  |  |
| S17               | 1041.8     | 6                    | Elliottsville, Winnecook  |  |  |  |
| S18               | 1285.2     | 8                    | Monson, Thorndike   |  |  |  |

TABLE D-2. CLASSIFICATION AND CHARACTERISTICS OF SOILS IN SAMPLING CLASSES.

|                                     |                        |                         | De         | pth (cm)                   |  |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|------------|----------------------------|--|
| Soil Name                           | Taxonomic<br>Category  | Particle Size<br>Class  | To Bedrock | To Impermeable<br>Material | Named Mapping Units  |
| ampling Class E2                    |                        |                         |            |                            |  |
| Aquents                             | Aquents                |                         | >150       | >150                       | 178A   |
| Basher                              | Fluvaquic Dystrocrepts | coarse-loamy            | >150       | 23                         | 18A  |
| Charles                             | Aeric Fluvaquents      | coarse-silty            | >150       | >150                       | 44 <b>A</b>  |
| Fluvaquents                         | Fluvaquents            | loamy                   | >150       | 76                         | 71A; 72A   |
| Medomak                             | Fluvaquic Humaquepts   | coarse-silty            | >150       | >150                       | 118 <b>A</b> .   |
| Romney                              | Aeric Fluvaquents      | coarse-loamy            | >150       | >150                       | 175A   |
| <b>Jdifluvents</b>                  | Udifluvents '          | loamy                   |            |                            | 72 <b>A</b>  |
| Sampling Class E3                   |                        |                         |            |                            |  |
| Carver                              | Typic Udipsamments     | sandy                   | >150       | >150                       | 42A, B, C, D, E  |
| Hinckley                            | Typic Udorthents       | sandy-skeletal          | >150       | >150                       | 89A, B, C, D   |
| Plymouth                            | Typic Udipsamments     | sandy                   | >150       | >150                       | 156A, B, C, D  |
| Udipsamments,                       | •                      | •                       |            |                            |  |
| Undulating                          | Udipsamments           | sandy                   | >150       | >150                       | 504B   |
| Udipsamments,                       | Ildinosmente           | annal-                  | <b>150</b> | ~15D                       | 504C   |
| Rolling                             | Udipsamments           | sandy                   | >150       | >150                       |  |
| Windsor                             | Typic Udipsamments     | sandy                   | >150       | >150                       | 234A, B, C   |
| Sampling Class E5 Lithic Udorthents | Lithic Udorthents      | loamy-skeletai          | 10         | 10                         | 705C, E, F   |
| Lithic Udorthents                   | Lithic Udorthents      |                         | 5          | 5                          | 263C, E, F   |
| Schoodic                            | Lithic Udorthents      | loamy<br>loamy-skeletal | _          | 25                         | 181C, E, F   |
| Sampling Class E6<br>Udorthents,    |                        |                         |            |                            |  |
| Strip mine                          | Udorthents             | loamy-skeletal          | >150       | >150                       | 218  |
| Udorthents,<br>Smoothed             | Udorthents             |                         | >150       | >150                       | 217  |
|                                     | Cocincia               |                         | 7130       | <b>-130</b>                | 24.  |
| Sampling Class H1 Mahoosuc          | Typic Borofolists      |                         | 100        | 100                        | 241B; 356E, F; 176E  |
| Ricker                              | Lithic Borofolists     | ***                     | 100<br>25  | 100<br>25                  | 241B, 350E, F, 170E<br>242E, F; 254C, E; 263C, E<br>352C; 353E |
|                                     |                        |                         |            |                            | 3320, 3332   |
| Sampling Class H2 Adrian            | Terric Medisaprists    | sandy-skeletal          | >150       | >150                       | 2A   |
| Carlisle                            | Typic Medisaprists     |                         | >150       | >150                       | 41A  |
| Carbondale                          | Hemic Borosaprists     | loamy                   | >150       | >150                       | 258A   |
| Cathro                              | Terric Borosaprists    | loamy                   | >150       | >150                       | 253A   |
| Medisaprists                        | Medisaprists           |                         | >150       | >150                       | 178A   |
| Palms                               | Terric Medisaprists    | loamy                   | >150       | >150                       | 144A   |
| Rifle                               | Typic Borohemists      |                         | >150       | > 150                      | 166A   |
| Sampling Class H3                   |                        |                         |            |                            |  |
| Beseman                             | Terric Borosaprists    | loamy                   | >150       | 127                        | 243A   |
| Borosaprists                        | Borosaprists           |                         | >150       | >150                       | 30A;248C   |
| Chocorua                            | Terric Borohemists     | sandy-skeletal          |            | >150                       | 53A  |
| Dawson                              | Terric Borosaprists    |                         | >150       | >150                       | 61A  |
| Freetown                            | Typic Medisaprists     | ****                    | >150       | >150                       | 501A; 502A; 506A   |
| Greenwood                           | Typic Borohemists      | ***                     | >150       | >150                       | 79A  |
| Loxicy                              | Typic Borosaprists     |                         | >150       | >150                       | 103A   |
| Lupton                              | Typic Borosaprists     |                         | >150       | >150                       | 104A   |
| Ossipee                             | Terric Borohemists     | loamy                   | >150       | >150                       | 79A  |
| Sebago                              | Fibric Borohemists     |                         | >150       | >150                       | 188 <b>A</b>   |
| Swansea                             | Terric Medisaprists    | sandy                   | >150       | >150                       | 510A   |
| Waskish                             | Typic Sphagnofibrists  | ***                     | >150       | >150                       | 226A   |

TABLE D-2 (Continued).

|                                |                       |                        | De         | pth (cm)                   |                                    |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Soil Name                      | Taxonomic<br>Category | Particle Size<br>Class | To Bedrock | To Impermeable<br>Material | Named Mapping Units                |
|                                |                       |                        |            |                            |                                    |
| Sampling Class I1              | Wastanasa             |                        | > 150      | - 160                      | 732A; 767A                         |
| Haplaquepts                    | Haplaquepts           | coarse-ioamy           | >150       | >150                       |                                    |
| Leicester                      | Aeric Haplaquepts     | coarse-loamy           | >150       | >150                       | 98B                                |
| Lyme                           | Aeric Haplaquepts     | coarse-loamy           | >150       | >150                       | 107A, B                            |
| Neversink                      | Aeric Haplaquepts     | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 53                         | 136A                               |
| <b>Fughill</b>                 | Histic Humaquepts     | loamy-skeletal         | >150       | 76                         | 211A                               |
| Sampling Class 12              | A - 1 - TT - 11       | ,                      | . 450      | 40                         | 11 A D C                           |
| Brayton                        | Aeric Haplaquepts     | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 48                         | 32A, B, C                          |
| Brayton, Rubbly                | Aeric Haplaquepts     | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 48                         | 252A                               |
| Pillsbury                      | Aeric Haplaquepts     | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 56                         | 150A, B                            |
| Ridgebury                      | Aeric Haplaquepts     | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 41                         | 167A, B                            |
| Sampling Class 15              |                       |                        |            |                            |                                    |
| Chatfield                      | Typic Dystrochrepts   | ∞arse-loamy            | 50         | 50                         | 46C; 47C; 48C, E                   |
| Macomber                       | Typic Dystrochrepts   | loamy-skeietal         | 50         | 50                         | 108C; 704E                         |
| Sampling Class 16              |                       |                        |            |                            | 400 E 200 E 2011                   |
| Hollis                         | Lithic Dystrochrepts  | coarse-ioamy           | 25         | 25                         | 47C; 48C, E; 250C, E; 251F<br>514E |
| Nassau                         | Lithic Dystrochrepts  | loamy-skeletal         | 25         | 25                         | 246B                               |
| Taconic                        | Lithic Dystrochrepts  | loamy-skeletal         |            | 25                         | 108C; 704E; 705C, E, F             |
| Sampling Class 19              |                       |                        |            |                            | •                                  |
| Broadbrook                     | Typic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 61                         | 515B, C                            |
| Montauk                        | Typic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 69                         | 127B, C, D                         |
| Paxton                         | Typic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | > 150      | 61                         | 145B, D                            |
| Scituate                       | Typic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | > 150      | 71                         | 185B, C                            |
| Sampling Class I10             |                       |                        |            |                            |                                    |
| Canton                         | Typic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | J          |                            |                                    |
| C#410#                         | rypie zystromitepm    | sandy-skeletal         |            | >150                       | 38B, C, D                          |
| Charlesa                       | Tunio Dantanahasata   |                        |            |                            | 45B, C; 46C; 47C                   |
| Charlton                       | Typic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | >150                       |                                    |
| Giouœster                      | Typic Dystrochrepts   | sandy-skeletal         |            | >150                       | 76B, C, D, E                       |
| Narragansett                   | Typic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy o         |            |                            | 404D @ D                           |
|                                |                       | sandy-skeletal         | > 150      | >150                       | 505B, C, D                         |
| Sampling Class II1             | A quia Dentenal santa |                        | > 150      | <b>41</b>                  | 616D                               |
| Rainbow                        | Aquic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 61                         | 516B                               |
| Sutton                         | Aquic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | >150                       | 199A, B                            |
| Woodbridge                     | Aquic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | <b>64</b>                  | 236A, B, C                         |
| Sampling Class I21             | The in Demonstrate of | •                      | . 455      | . 100                      | 701 <i>G</i> D                     |
| Dummerson                      | Typic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | >150                       | 701C, D                            |
| Fullam                         | Aquic Dystrochrepts   | ∞arse-loamy            | > 150      | 60                         | 702B, C                            |
| Lanesboro                      | Typic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 76                         | 703B, C                            |
| Sampling Class 125<br>Chippewa | Typic Fragiaquepts    | fine lea               | ~160       | 40                         | 52A, B                             |
|                                | 7. 0                  | fine-loamy             | > 150      | 40<br>> 150                | 259C                               |
| Massena                        | Aeric Haplaquepts     | coarse-loamy           | >150       | >150                       |                                    |
| Morris                         | Aeric Fragiaquepts    | ∞arse-loamy            | >150       | 38                         | 129A, B, C, D                      |
| Norwich                        | Typic Fragiaquepts    | fine-loamy             | >150       | 38                         | 138A                               |
| Rexford                        | Aeric Fragiaquepts    | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 45                         | 165A                               |
| Scriba                         | Aeric Fragiaquepts    | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 33                         | 186A                               |
| Tuller                         | Lithic Haplaquepts    | loamy-skeleta          |            | 25                         | 257B                               |
| Volusia                        | Aeric Fragiaquepts    | fine-loamy             | >150       | 33                         | 224A, B, C                         |

TABLE D-2 (Continued).

|                    |                       |                        | Dc         | oth (cm)                   |                              |
|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Soil Name          | Taxonomic<br>Category | Particle Size<br>Class | To Bedrock | To Impermeable<br>Material | Named Mapping Units          |
| Sampling Class 129 |                       |                        |            |                            |                              |
| Lordstown          | Typic Dystrochrepts   | ∞arse-ioamy            | 50         | 50                         | 101B, C, D, E                |
| Manlius            | Typic Dystrochrepts   | loamy-skeletal         | 50         | 50                         | 110C; 246B                   |
| Oquaga             | Typic Dystrochrepts   | loamy-skeletai         | 50         | 50                         | 141B, C, D, E, F; 142B, C, D |
| Sampling Class 130 |                       |                        |            |                            | 44D 40G D D 440D G D         |
| Arnot              | Lithic Dystrochrepts  | loamy-skeletal         | 25         | 25                         | 11B; 12C, E, F; 142B, C, D   |
| Insula             | Lithic Dystrochrepts  | loamy                  | 25         | 25                         | 259C; 260E; 261F             |
| Sampling Class 133 |                       |                        |            |                            | orn C D.ME                   |
| Lackawanna         | Typic Fragiochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 61                         | 96B, C, D; 97E               |
| Mardin             | Typic Fragiochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | > 150      | 50                         | 114B, C, D                   |
| Swartswood         | Typic Fragiochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 75                         | 97E; 202B, C, D              |
| Wellsboro          | Typic Fragiochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 56                         | 229A, B, C, D                |
| Wurtboro           | Typic Fragiochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 43                         | 239B, C                      |
| Sampling Class 137 |                       |                        |            |                            | 100D                         |
| Moosilauke         | Aeric Haplaquepts     | sandy                  | >150       | >150                       | 128B                         |
| Scarboro           | Histic Humaquepts     | sandy                  | >150       | >150                       | 511A                         |
| Searsport          | Histic Humaquepts     | sandy                  | >150       | >150                       | 187 <b>A</b>                 |
| Sampling Class 138 |                       | _                      |            |                            |                              |
| Biddeford          | Histic Humaquepts     | fine                   | >150       | 40                         | 28A                          |
| Humaquepts         | Frigid Humaquepts     | coarse-loamy           | > 150      | >150                       | 732A                         |
| Humaquepts         | Mesic Humaquepts      | coarse-loamy           | >150       | >150                       | 767A                         |
| Muskellunge        | Aeric Ochraquaifs     | fine                   | >150       | 30                         | 262A                         |
| Peacham            | Histic Humaquepts     | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 25                         | 146A, B                      |
| Raynham            | Aeric Haplaquepts     | coarse-silty           | >150       | 61                         | 163A                         |
| Roundabout         | Aeric Haplaquepts     | coarse-silty           | > 150      | >150                       | 173A                         |
| Scantic            | Typic Haplaquepts     | fine                   | >150       | 28                         | 180A, B                      |
| Swanville          | Aeric Haplaquepts     | fine-silty             | >150       | 56                         | 201A, B                      |
| Whitman            | Typic Humaquepts      | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 38                         | 512A                         |
| Sampling Class 140 | A ·                   | _                      |            |                            |                              |
| Agawam             | Typic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           |            |                            |                              |
|                    |                       | sandy-skeletai         |            | >150                       | 4A                           |
| Braceville         | Typic Fragiochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | > 150      | 61                         | 31A                          |
| Haven              | Typic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           |            |                            |                              |
|                    |                       | sandy-skeleta          |            | >150                       | 507A, B, C                   |
| Merrimac           | Typic Dystrochrepts   | sandy                  | >150       | >150                       | 120A, B, C                   |
| Riverhead          | Typic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-loamy           | >150       | >150                       | 170B, C                      |
| Wyoming            | Typic Dystrochrepts   | loamy-skeleta          | 1 > 150    | >150                       | 240C, D, E                   |
| Sampling Class I41 | A * * 7.4*            |                        | . 100      | > 150                      | 43 A D                       |
| Deerfield          | Aquic Udipsamments    | sandy                  | >150       | >150                       | 62A, B                       |
| Sudbury            | Aquic Dystrochrepts   | sandy                  | >150       | >150                       | 503A, B                      |
| Sampling Class 142 | A! - #9 1             | •                      | . 454      | 100                        | £170                         |
| Belgrade           | Aquic Eutrochrepts    | coarse-loamy           | > 150      | 100                        | 517B                         |
| Boothbay           | Aquic Eutrochrepts    | fine-silty             | >150       | 56                         | 29B                          |
| Buxton             | Aquic Eutrochrepts    | fine                   | > 150      | 53                         | 37B                          |
| Scio               | Aquic Dystrochrepts   | ∞arse-silty            | >150       | >150                       | 183A, B                      |
| Tisbury            | Aquic Dystrochrepts   | coarse-silty           | > 150      | >150                       | 508A, B                      |
| Sampling Class 146 |                       | <u>.</u>               | . 455      | <b>50</b>                  | 264                          |
| Burnham            | Histic Humaquepts     | coarse-loamy           |            | 50                         | 36A                          |
| Monarda            | Aeric Haplaquepts     | ∞arse-loamy            | >150       | 61                         | 123A, B, C                   |

TABLE D-2 (Continued).

|                                     |                         |                        | De                                 | epth (cm)       |                              |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Soil Name                           | Taxonomic<br>Category   | Particle Size<br>Class | To Impermeable To Bedrock Material |                 | Named Mapping Units          |
|                                     |                         | C1833                  |                                    | 7710000101      |                              |
| Sampling Class \$01                 |                         |                        |                                    |                 |                              |
| <b>Vaskeag</b>                      | Aeric Haplaquods        | sandy                  | 50                                 | 50              | 131A, B                      |
| Vaumburg                            | Aeric Haplaquods        | sandy                  | >150                               | >150            | 134A                         |
| Vaumburg                            | Aeric Haplaquods        | sandy                  | >150                               | >150            | 135A                         |
| Pipestone                           | Entic Haplaquods        | sandý                  | >150                               | >150            | 151A                         |
| Sampling Class S02                  |                         |                        |                                    |                 | _                            |
| Adams                               | Typic Haplorthods       | sandy                  | >150                               | >150            | 1A, B, C, D; 7C              |
| Allagash                            | Typic Haplorthods       | coarse-loamy o         | 1                                  |                 | _                            |
|                                     |                         | sandy-skeletai         | >150                               | >150            | 6B; 7C                       |
| Colton                              | Typic Haplorthods       | sandy-skeletal         | >150                               | >150            | 54A, B, C, D                 |
| Croghan                             | Aquic Haplorthods       | sandý                  | >150                               | >150            | 57A, B                       |
| Duane                               | Typic Haplorthods       | sandy-skeletal         |                                    | >150            | 64 <b>A</b>                  |
| Masardis                            | Typic Haplorthods       | sandy-skeletal         |                                    | >150            | 116B, C, D                   |
| Sheepscot                           | Typic Haplorthods       | sandy-skeletal         |                                    | >150            | 190B                         |
| •                                   | 1 y pic 1 ia pictilious | Salidy-Skeletal        | <b>&gt; 150</b>                    | <b>&gt; 150</b> | 1,02                         |
| Sampling Class S05 Aeric Haplaquods | Aeric Haplaquods        | coarse-loamy           | >150                               | 50              | 3A, B                        |
| Typic Haplaquods                    | Typic Haplaquods        | coarse-loamy           | >150                               | 75              | 244 <b>A</b>                 |
| Typic Hapiaquous                    | Typic Mapiaquous        | coarse-loamy           | >130                               | 73              | 277A                         |
| Sampling Class S09                  | Typia Uaplasthada       |                        | > 150                              | 80              | 208B, C, D, E; 21C, E, F     |
| Becket                              | Typic Haplorthods       | coarse-loamy           | >150                               |                 |                              |
| Marlow                              | Typic Haplorthods       | coarse-loamy           | >150                               | 61              | 115B, C, D                   |
| Potsdam                             | Typic Fragiorthods      | coarse-loamy           | >150                               | 66              | 160B, C, D; 161C, E          |
| Sampling Class S10                  | 77                      |                        | . 150                              | , 150           | 00D C E                      |
| Hermon                              | Typic Haplorthods       | sandy-skeletal         |                                    | >150            | 88B, C, E                    |
| Hermon, Rubbly                      | Typic Haplorthods       | sandy-skeletal         |                                    | >150            | 87C, D, E                    |
| Waumbek                             | Aquic Haplorthods       | sandy-skeletal         | >150                               | >150            | 227B                         |
| Sampling Class S11                  | m 1: ** 1 - 4 - 1       |                        | - 450                              | - 450           | 22D C D E E 22C 214C         |
| Berkshire                           | Typic Haplorthods       | coarse-loamy           | >150                               | >150            | 22B, C, D, E, F; 23C; 214C,  |
| Berkshire, Rubbly                   | Typic Haplorthods       | coarse-loamy           | >150                               | >150            | 255D, E                      |
| Danforth                            | Typic Haplorthods       | loamy-skeleta          |                                    | >150            | 59C, D                       |
| Monadnock                           | Typic Haplorthods       | coarse-loamy           | o/                                 |                 |                              |
|                                     |                         | sandy-skeletal         | >150                               | > 150           | 122B, C, D, E                |
| Sampling Class \$12                 |                         |                        |                                    |                 |                              |
| Rawsonville                         | Typic Haplorthods       | coarse-loamy           | 50                                 | 50              | 90C; 162C, D                 |
| Tunbridge                           | Typic Haplorthods       | coarse-loamy           | 50                                 | 50              | 161C, E; 213B, C, D; 214C, I |
|                                     |                         |                        |                                    |                 | 215C, E, F                   |
| Sampling Class S13                  |                         |                        |                                    |                 |                              |
| Hogback                             | Lithic Haplorthods      | lo <b>amy</b>          | 25                                 | 25              | 90C; 162C, D                 |
| Lyman                               | Lithic Haplorthods      | loamy                  | 25                                 | 25              | 21C, E, F; 23C; 88C, E;      |
| •                                   | -                       | ·                      |                                    |                 | 105B, C, D, F; 106C, F; 172F |
|                                     |                         |                        |                                    |                 | 214E; 215C, E, F; 254C, E;   |
|                                     |                         |                        |                                    |                 | 263C, E, F                   |
| Saddleback                          | Humic Cryorthods        | thixotropic            | 25                                 | 25              | 176E                         |
| Sampling Class S14                  |                         |                        |                                    |                 |                              |
| Стагу                               | Aquic Fragiorthods      | coarse-loamy           | >150                               | 61              | 56B, C                       |
| Peru                                | Aquic Haplorthods       | coarse-loamy           | > 150                              | 61              | 148B, C, D                   |
| Skerry                              | Aquic Haplorthods       | coarse-loamy           | > 150                              | 64              | 192B, C, D                   |
| Sunapee                             | Aquic Haplorthods       | coarse-loamy           | > 150                              | > 150           | 196B, C                      |
| Sunapee, Rubbly                     | Aquic Haplorthods       | coarse-loamy           | > 150                              | >150            | 256B                         |
| Worden                              | Aquic Haplorthods       | coarse-ioamy           |                                    |                 | 238B, C, D                   |
| 44 OF CET                           | Adare trabioi mous      | coarse-roamy           | > 150                              | 64              | 130B, C, D                   |

TABLE D-2 (Continued).

|                     |                        |                        | Depth (cm) |                            |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| Soil Name           | Taxonomic<br>Category  | Particle Size<br>Class | To Bedrock | To Impermeable<br>Material | Named Mapping Units    |
| Sampling Class S15  |                        |                        |            |                            |                        |
| Bangor              | Typic Haplorthods      | coarse-loamy           | >150       | >150                       | 15B, C, E              |
| Chesuncook          | Typic Haplorthods      | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 53                         | 51B, C, D, E, F        |
| Enchanted           | Humic Cryorthods       | thixotropic            | 100        | 100                        | 355D, E; 356E, F       |
| Sampling Class \$16 |                        |                        |            |                            | *                      |
| ixmont              | Aquic Haplorthods      | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 53                         | 63B, C                 |
| Iowland             | Aquic Haplorthods      | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 40                         | 357B, C                |
| licholville         | Aquic Haplorthods      | coarse-silty           | >150       | >150                       | 137B                   |
| urplus              | Typic Cryorthods       | thixotropic            | >150       | 66                         | 354C, D, E             |
| Celos               | Aquic Haplorthods      | coarse-loamy           | >150       | 36                         | 204B, C                |
| Sampling Class \$17 |                        |                        |            |                            |                        |
| Elliottsville       | Typic Haplorthods      | coarse-loamy           | 50         | 50                         | 67B, C, D, E; 353E;    |
| Winnecook           | Typic Haplorthods      | loamy-skeletal         |            | 50                         | 235C, D; 358E          |
|                     | -1 Lan annih taramanna |                        |            |                            |                        |
| Sampling Class S18  |                        |                        |            |                            |                        |
| Monson              | Lithic Haplorthods     | loamy                  | 25         | 25                         | 125C; 126E; 352C; 353E |
| Thorndike           | Lithic Haplorthods     | loamy-skeletal         | 25         | 25                         | 205B, C; 206C, E; 358E |

## TABLE D-3. CHARACTERISTICS OF SOILS IN THE SAMPLING CLASSES

| Class | Description  |
|-------|--|
| E2 :  | Soils occur in recent deep alluvial deposits from mixed parent materials on the margins of lakes and in flood plains on low stream terraces where the soil is wet at some time of the year. Soils are very poorly, poorly, or somewhat poorly drained. These mineral soils have an irregular decrease in organic carbon content with depth, or have a relatively high amount of organic carbon in deep layers. The particle size class is loamy.   |
| E3    | Soils are deep, sandy, mineral soils with little or no development of pedogenic horizons. Soils are developed in till and glacio-fluvial deposits derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Permeability is rapid or very rapid, and the soils are excessively drained.  |
| E5    | Soils are mineral soils with a lithic contact within 50 cm of the surface and little or no pedogenic development. Soils are developed in till derived from igneous or metamorphic rocks. The particle size class is loamy or loamy-skeletal. Permeability is moderate or moderately rapid, and soils are well drained to excessively drained.  |
| E6    | Soils are on areas disturbed by human activity, including strip mines, pits, quarries, and landfills. Recent disturbance has destroyed or homogenized the pedogenic development of these deep mineral soils. The soil parent material was once deposited as till derived from various rocks. The particle size class is loamy or loamy-skeletal. Permeability is moderately slow to moderately rapid, and soils are well drained or somewhat excessively drained.  |
| H1    | Soils are freely drained organic materials derived from leaf litter, twigs, and branches resting on or partly filling interstices in fragmental materials or directly overlying bedrock that is less than one meter from the surface. Soils are cool, have a frigid temperature regime, and are somewhat excessively drained. Thin mineral layers of less than 10 cm may occur, but the combined thickness of the organic material is more than twice that of the mineral material.  |
| H2    | Soils are deep organic materials which have been mostly decomposed. These soils differ from those in Class Hi in that the soil reaction is euic, i.e., the pH of undried samples in 0.01 M CaCl <sub>2</sub> is 4.5 or higher, in at least some part of the organic materials in the control section rather than dysic. Soils are very poorly drained or poorly drained. Either ground water is at or near the surface nearly all the time, or ground water tends to fluctuate which allows for periodic aerobic decomposition of organic materials. In some soils of this class, mineral layers and layers of less decomposed organic material tend to interfere with water movement. |
| Н3    | Soils are composed of deep organic materials which have been mostly decomposed. These soils differ from Class H2 in that the soil reaction is dysic, i.e., the pH in 0.01 M CaCl., of undried samples is less than 4.5, in at parts of the organic materials in the control section rather than euic. Soils are very poorly drained. Either ground water is at or near the surface nearly all the time, or ground water tends to fluctuate which allows for periodic aerobic decomposition of the organic materials. In some soils of this class, mineral layers and layers of less decomposed organic tend to interfere with water movement.  |
| I1    | Soils of this class are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks of interbedded sandstone and siltstone. Unless artificially drained, ground water stands at or near the surface fo long periods of time, but not throughout the year. Soils differs from those in Classes 12, 137, and 138 in that the pH is less than 5.0 in 0.01 M CaCl <sub>2</sub> throughout the control section. The particle size class is coarse-loamy or loamy-skeletal. Soils are poorly drained or very poorly drained.   |
| 12    | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Unless artificially drained, ground water stands at or near the surface for long periods of time, but not throughout the year. Soils have a layer of dense till at a depth of 1 meter or less from the soil surface. The particle size class coarse-loamy. Soils are somewhat poorly drained or poorly drained.   |
| I5    | Soils are moderately deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks of from schist and phyllite. Soils have base saturation less than 60 percent in all subhorizons between depths of 25 and 75 cm below the soil surface. The particle size class is coarse-loamy or loamy-skeletal. Soils are well drained.   |
| 16    | Soils are shallow mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks or from schist and phyllite. Bedrock occurs at less than 50 cm below the soil surface. The particle size class is loamy of loamy-skeletal. Soils are well drained.  |

(Continued)

TABLE D-3 (Continued).

| Class | Description   |
|-------|---|
| 19    | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Soils have base saturation less than 60 percent in all subhorizons between depths of 25 and 75 cm below the soil surface. The particle size class is coarse-loamy. Soils are moderately well drained or well drained. A slowly permeable layer occurs at a depth of 50 to 100 cm below the soil surface.   |
| I10   | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Soils have base saturation less than 60 percent in all subhorizons between depths of 25 and 75 cm below the soil surface. The particle size class ranges from coarse-loamy to sandy-skeletal. Soils are well drained or somewhat excessively drained.  |
| 111   | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Soils have base saturation less than 60 percent in all subhorizons between depths of 25 and 75 cm below the soil surface. Ground water is present in the soil in the deep layers during winter, but disappears in summer. The particle size class is coarse-loamy. Soils are moderately well drained.  |
| I21   | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from schist and phyllite. Soils have base saturation less than 60 percent in all subhorizons between 25 and 75 cm below the soil surface. The particle size class is coarse-loamy, and the soils are well drained.   |
| 125   | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till or glacio-fluvial deposits derived from interbedded sedimentary rocks. Most of these soils are underlain by a fragipan a 30 to 50 cm below the soil surface. One soil in this class has bedrock between 25 and 50 cm below the soil surface. Horizons above the fragipan or bedrock are saturated with ground water for some months in most years. The particle size class is loamy or loamy-skeletal, and the soils are very poorly drained to somewhat poorly drained. |
| 129   | Soils are moderately deep mineral soils developed in till derived from interbedded sandstone and siltstone or from siltstone and shale. Soils are underlain by bedrock at depths between 50 and 100 cm below the soil surface. Soils have base saturation less tan 60 percent in all subhorizons at depths between 25 and 75 cm below the soils surface. The particle size class is coarse-loamy or loamy-skeletal, and the soils are well drained or somewhat excessively drained.                                     |
| 130   | Soils are shallow mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks or from sandstone and siltstone. Bedrock occurs at less than 50 cm below the soil surface. The particle size class is loamy or loamy-skeletal, and the soils are well drained and moderately well drained.   |
| 133   | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from sandstone and siltstone. A fragipan occurs at a depth of about 50 cm. Usually ground water is perched above the fragipan at some time of the year. The particle size class is coarse-loamy, and the soils are somewhat poorly drained to well drained.  |
| 137   | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till or glacio-fluvial deposits derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Unless artificially drained, ground water stands at or near the surface for long periods of time, but not throughout the year. The particle size class is sandy, and the soils are poorly drained or very poorly drained.   |
| 138   | Soils are deep mineral soils derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Most soils in this class have a layer of dense till at a depth of less than 1 meter from the soil surface. Soils have an aquic moisture regime, an are somewhat poorly drained to very poorly drained. The particle size class ranges from fine to coarse-loamy.   |
| 140   | Soils are acid mineral soils that occur on deep coarse-textured glacio-fluvial deposits derived from sandstone and siltstone or from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. The particle size class ranges from coarse-loamy to sandy and from loamy-skeletal to coarse-loamy over sandy-skeletal. Permeability is moderately rapid to ver rapid, and soils are moderately well drained to somewhat excessively drained.  |
| I41   | Soils are mineral soils that occur on deep sandy glacio-fluvial deposits derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Soils are saturated with water within 1 meter of the soil surface during some part of the year. The particle size class is sandy. Permeability is rapid, and soils are moderately well drained.  |

(Continued)

## TABLE D-3 (Continued).

| Class      | Description  |
|------------|--|
| 142        | Soils are mineral soils that occur on deep, loamy glacio-fluvial deposits derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Soils are saturated with water within 60 cm of the soil surface at some time of the year. The particle size class ranges from fine to coarse-loamy, and soils are moderately well drained or somewhat poorly drained. This class includes soils with and without carbonates or base saturation that is 60 percent or higher in some subhorizon.  |
| 146        | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed metamorphic and sedimentary rocks. Ground water stands at or near the surface of these soils at some time during each year, but not at all seasons. The particle size class is coarse-loamy, and the soils are very poorly drained or poorly drained.  |
| S1         | Soils are moderately deep or deep mineral soils developed in till or glacio-fluvial deposits derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Soils have fluctuating ground water at or near the soil surface. An ochric epipedon, i.e., a surface horizon too thin or with too little organic carbon to be an umbric horizon, overlies a spodic horizon, i.e., a layer in which an amorphous mixture of organic carbon and aluminum have accumulated. The particle size class is sandy, and soils are poorly drained or somewhat poorly drained. |
| S2         | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in glacio-fluvial deposits derived from mixed igneous or metamorphic rocks. Soils have a spodic horizon of amorphous organic carbon, iron, and aluminum accumulation. Particle size class ranges from sandy to sandy-skeletal, and soils are moderately well drained to excessively drained.  |
| S <b>5</b> | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from granite or mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Soils have fluctuating ground water at or near the soil surface. Soils have a spodic horizon, i.e., a subsoil layer in which an amorphous mixture of organic carbon and aluminum have accumulated. Particle size class is coarse-loamy, and soils are poorly drained of somewhat poorly drained.   |
| <b>S9</b>  | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Soils have a spodic horizon of aluminum, iron, and organic carbon accumulation in which no one of these elements dominates. Particle size class is coarse-loamy, and soils are well drained. Permeability is less than 0.2 inches per hour.   |
| S10        | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Soils have a spodic horizon of aluminum, iron, and organic carbon accumulation in which no one of these elements dominates. Particle size class is sandy-skeletal, and soils are moderately well drained or somewhat excessively drained.   |
| S11        | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. These soils have a spodic horizon of aluminum, iron, and organic carbon accumulation in which no one of these elements dominates. The particle size class is coarse-loamy, loamy-skeletal, or coarse-loamy over sandy-skeletal, and the soils are well drained. Permeability is greater than 0.2 inches per hour.   |
| S12        | Soils are moderately deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. These soils have a spodic horizon of aluminum, iron, and organic carbon accumulation in which no one of these elements dominates. The particle size class is coarse-loamy, and the soils are well drained.   |
| S13        | Soils are shallow mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. Bedrock occurs at depths less than 50 cm from the soil surface. These soils have a spodic horizon of aluminum, iron, and organic carbon accumulation in which no one of these elements dominates. The particle size class is loamy or thixotropic. Soils are well drained or somewhat excessively drained.   |
| S14        | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed igneous and metamorphic rocks. These soils have a spodic horizon of aluminum, iron, and organic carbon accumulation in which no one of these elements dominates. Ground water fluctuates either in or just below the spodic horizon. The particle size class is coarse-loamy, and the soils are somewhat poorly drained or moderately well drained.  |
| S15        | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed metamorphic and sedimentary rocks. These soils have a spodic horizon of aluminum, iron and organic carbon accumulation in which no one of these elements dominates. Particle size class is coarse-loamy or thixotropic, and the soils are moderately well drained or well drained.   |

(Continued)

### TABLE D-3 (Continued).

| Class | Description  |
|-------|--|
| S16   | Soils are deep mineral soils developed in till or lacustrine deposits derived from mixed metamorphic and sedimentary rocks. These soils have a spodic horizon with a moderate amount of organic carbon. Ground water fluctuates either in or just below the spodic horizon for most soils in this class. Particle size class is coarse-loamy or coarse-silty, except for one soil that is thixotropic. Soils are somewhat poorly drained or moderately well drained. |
| S17   | Soils are moderately deep mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed metamorphic and sedimentary rocks. These soils have a spodic horizon of aluminum, iron, and organic carbon accumulation in which no one of these elements dominates. Particle size class is coarse-loamy or loamy-skeletal. Soils are well drained.   |
| S18   | Soils are shallow mineral soils developed in till derived from mixed rocks. Bedrock occurs within 50 cm of the soil surface. Soils have a spodic horizon of aluminum, iron, and organic carbon accumulation in which no one of these elements dominates. Particle-size class is loamy or loamy-skeletal. Soils are somewhat excessively drained.   |

## Appendix E

## New York Sampling Phase Outline and Checklist

The Soil Conservation Service in New York prepared a summary of the protocols and a checklist for the sampling crews to use in the field. It is reproduced here with minor editorial revision.

# Sampling Phase Outline (Abbreviated)

#### I. Site Selection

- 1. Proceed to Point 1 (10 yds. x 10 yds.) shown on map.
  - a. Place flag at Point 1 if soil sampling class or vegetation class is not applicable.
  - b. Proceed to locate proper sampling class, at 20 feet intervals (straight line) from the marker flag up to a distance of 500 feet.
  - c. Direction taken from marker flag will be chosen from a random numbers table (eyes closed pencil point the table to select a number). North = No. 2, Northeast = 3, East = 4,...up to Northwest = 9.
- 2. Reasons for not sampling Point 1 and surrounding area.
  - a. Inappropriate soil or vegetation sampling class.
  - b. Landowner won't give permission.
  - c. Inaccessible.
- 3. If Point 1 cannot be sampled, go to Point 2 and repeat procedure in Item 1 above.
- 4. If Point 2 cannot be sampled, proceed to Point 3, and so on.

#### II. Site Preparation

- 1. Ribbon 4 trees (if wooded and allowable) surrounding sampling site for relocation.
- 2. Dig pit 1 meter square to a depth that will allow sampling to 60 inches (v. deep soils).

#### III. Pre-Sampling Activities

- 1. Photographs (ASA 400 Ektachrome slides)
  - a. Pit face with completed information card attached to upper horizon (ID card must be focused and readable).
  - b. Full profile with ID card and measuring tape.
  - c. Edge of pit and surrounding landscape.
  - d. Major tree canopy (cover type).
    - (NOTE: Next photo set will start with the ID card on next sampling pit features photographed should be in the same order.)
- 2. Record azimuth facing perpendicular to pit face sampled. (No azimuth for wet organic soils.)

#### IV. Profile Description

a. Describe on new 232 coding form (to 60") with current SSM, Chapter 4 terminology.

- b. Fill out form completely except for the following blocks: (1) Precip., (2) Temp °C, (3) Weather Station No., (4) ERWA, (5) Vol Lat/Tot., (6) Effervescence, and (7) Pores.
- c. Soil Series block if at all possible, profile should be within range of characteristics for a series.
- d. PHYS block codes will be taken from map unit description.
- e. Describers' Names block add crew ID numbers at end -

XXXXXXX - NY01 YYYYY - NY02 ZZZZ - NY03

- f. Location Description block -
  - (1st Line) Watershed ID No. site selected (1,2,etc.) soil class (E5,I21,etc.) -Azimuth.
  - ii. (2nd line) locate pedon from N and E boundary of watershed (ft.) scale from maps.
- g. Horizon Depth block in meters.
- h. Rock Fragment block Record by volume the 2 mm to 3" size; 3" to 10" size, and the > 10" size in the 3 blocks provided.

#### V. Sampling

- 1. Bulk Samples
  - a. No. of Horizons sampled usually no more than 6 unless additional horizons are unique a field duplicate horizon will be sampled per pedon (your choice).
  - b. Horizon Thickness sample no horizon less than 1-1/4 inches thick unless unique (samples from these horizons can be less than 1 gal.).
  - c. Split Samples generally split horizons if > 12" thick in the upper 1 meter -split > 30 inch thick horizons below 1 meter (exception is wet histosols). Use judgment.
  - d. Amount of Sample
    - -1 gal. mineral soil
    - -2 gal. mineral soil if 2 to 20 mm fraction is > 45% by volume
    - -2 gal. organic soils
  - e. Size Fraction to Sample < 20mm fraction will be bagged all samples sieved through a 3/4" sieve.
  - f. Horizons to Sample
    - -Do not sample Oi horizon in mineral soils.
    - -Can combine thin Oa and Oe horizons in mineral soils.
    - -Do not combine mineral soil horizons.
    - -1 horizon per pedon must be sampled as a field duplicate.
  - g. Handling Bag Samples
    - -Fold plastic sample bag several times at 1" increments and staple across the top.
    - -Attach Label A (stick-on) to outside of plastic bag.
    - -Place plastic bag inside cloth bag and tie.

-Outside of cloth bag should have same information as on DSS label A - use indelible marker on lower right quadrant.

#### 2. Clod Samples

- a. Obtain 3 clods per horizon where possible approximately fist size if possible.
- b. Prepare clods as prescribed in the field sampling manual Section 7.
- Label each clod with sample number on masking tape affixed to the top of the hair nest.
- d. Place clod in small plastic bags and in quart containers or clod boxes label containers or boxes with 2" x 2" sticker label.

#### VI. Labels

a. All samples will be labeled with Label A (example below):

|  | Label A          |
|--|------------------|
| NY01-XXXXXXX<br>NY02-YYYYY<br>NY03-ZZZZ  | Date Sampled:    |
| Watershed No   | Site ID:         |
| R - Routine<br>FD - Field Duplicate<br>A - Audit                                   | Sample Code:     |
| Horizon depth (cm)   | Horizon:         |
| NY01 will use 400-499<br>NY02 will use 500-599<br>NY03 will use 600-690            | Set ID:          |
| (Set ID is number for each day sampled; i.e., 2 sampled pedons in one day would ha | ve the same no.) |
| h Solit horizons samples .   |                  |

-Compound routine samples label as R12,R22,etc.
-Compound field duplicate samples label as FD1,FD2.

-Single routine samples label as R11.

#### VII. Field Notebooks

- a. Daily activities recorded including any problems; reason for going to 2nd,3rd,etc., sampling site; any field notes; unusual things not recorded on 232 form.
- b. Location and identification of each sampled pedon. (Notebooks will be submitted to EPA when project is complete).

#### VIII. Sample Transport

- a. Samples from the field should be taken immediately to cold storage facility at one of the staging areas (cold storage =  $4 \,^{\circ}$ C not below  $0 \,^{\circ}$ C).
- b. Samples will be transported from cold storage at weeks end to Cornell in ice chests packed with 8 frozen gel packets.

| Soil Sa         | mpli   | ng ( | Team Leader Signature<br>NY 0<br>Class<br>Class  |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------|--|------|--|--|--|--|--|
| NY S            | am   | pli  | ng Phase Checklist   |  |  |  |  |
| NOTE:           | Please check all items when complete for each pedon sampled. Each watershed envelop must contain (1) checklist per pedon sampled or the envelope will not be accepted from the field crew. Watershed envelops will be collected in the field after sampling is complete for a given watershed. Use this list to double check 232's and green notebook. |      |  |  |  |  |  |
| Comple<br>Items | ted  |      |  |  |  |  |  |
|                 | I.   | Sit  | te Selection   |  |  |  |  |
|                 |  | 1.   | If point (pt) 1 is unsuitable, mark with yellow flag and locate suitable sampling class along an azimuth chosen from random numbers table (20 ft. intervals up to 500 ft. from yellow flag). |  |  |  |  |
|                 |  | 2.   | After 5 random azimuths, if pt 1 cannot be sampled, go to pt 2, etc.   |  |  |  |  |
|                 |  | 3.   | Record sample point numbers and reasons for not sampling in green notebook and below:  |  |  |  |  |
|                 |  | pt1  | l pt2 pt3 pt4 pt5  |  |  |  |  |
|                 |  |      | suitable   |  |  |  |  |
|                 |  |      | unsuitable soil or vegetation class  |  |  |  |  |
|                 |  |      | no landowner permission  |  |  |  |  |
|                 |  |      | inaccessible   |  |  |  |  |
|                 |  |      |  |  |  |  |  |

## II. Site Preparation

- 1. Ribbon 4 trees (orange flagging) at sampling site finally chosen.
- 2. If site chosen for pt1, pt2, pt3, pt4, or pt5, circle the point on xerox copy of the watershed.
- 3. If site chosen is along a random azimuth, mark the site with a star (\*) on the xerox copy of the watershed.

|                         |                                   | 4.   | Excavate soil pit deep soils).   | pit 1 m x 1 m to depth necessary for sampling (up to 60" for very |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|--|---|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|--|--|--|--|
|                         | I                                 | II.  | . Pre-Sampling Activities  |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
| <del></del>             |                                   | 1.   | Fill out yellow pho  | to ID card.   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         | ;                                 | 2.   | Photograph clean pit face with yellow ID card attached to upper horizon (in focus and readable) (fill frame with card and pit face). |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         | :                                 | 3.   | Photograph full profile with metric tape and yellow card (fill frame with profile).  |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         | ,                                 | 4.   | Photograph edge of pit and surrounding landscape.  |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         | :                                 | 5.   | Photograph major tree canopy (record cover type in green notebook).  |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         | 1                                 | 6.   | Record photo log in green notebook (pedon no., date, exposure no.;s, roll no., and name of photographer).                            |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         |                                   | 7.   | Record latitude and longitude of sampling pt in green notebook and in lat./long. block on 232 form.                                  |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
| IV. Profile Description |                                   |  |  |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         |                                   | 1.   | . Fill in all blocks except those marked "blank" (see xerox example 232).  |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         |                                   | 2.   | Make sure profile characteristics are within range for a series chosen (if possible).  |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         |                                   | 3.   | Take PHYS block information from map unit description sheet.   |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         |                                   | 4.   | Describers' names block - add crew ID no.'s at end, as shown on xerox example 232.   |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         |                                   | 5.   | . Location Description block - follow format shown on xerox example 232.   |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         |                                   | 6.   | . Horizon Depth block - record in centimeters.   |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         |                                   | 7. Rock Fragment block - record % by volume in following order; 2 mm-2"; 2"-10"; >10". |  |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         |                                   | 8. Record site location in green notebook.   |  |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         | V.                                | На   | prizon Sampling  | Date  |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
|                         |                                   |  |  | <u>H-1</u>  | <u>H-2</u> | <u>H-3</u> | <u>H-4</u> | <u>H-5</u> | <u>H-6</u> |  |  |  |  |
| 1.                      | Record                            | d h  | orizon symbol>   |   |            |            |            | _          |            |  |  |  |  |
| 2.                      | Sampl                             | e S  | 3/4" sieved?   |   | _          |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
| 3.                      | Sampl                             | le d   | double-bagged?   |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |
| 4.                      | NADSS label on inner plastic bag? |  |  |   |            |            |            | _          | _          |  |  |  |  |
|                         |                                   |  |  |   |            |            |            |            |            |  |  |  |  |

|     |   | <u>H-1</u>   | <u>H-2</u>  | <u>H-3</u> | <u>H-4</u>         | <u>H-5</u>  | <u>H-6</u> |
|-----|---|--------------|-------------|------------|--------------------|-------------|------------|
| 5.  | Is sample routine and not split (R11) (mineral-1 gal, organic-2 gal)?   |              |             |            |                    | _           |            |
| 6.  | Is sample split mineral? (upper & lower) (2 gal tota  | 1) —         |             |            |                    | ******      |            |
| 7.  | Is sampling split organic? (upper & lower) (4 gal total   | 1) —         |             |            |                    |             |            |
| 8.  | Is sample field duplicate? (FDO or FD1, FD2 if split)   | _            | _           | _          |                    |             |            |
| 9.  | Does sample contain >459 rock fragments by volume (need 2 gal) (R12 and R22)  |              |             | _          |                    | <del></del> |            |
| 10. | Is info. recorded on outer canvas bag? (Use indelible   | pen.)        |             |            |                    | _           |            |
| 11. | Is Set ID No. current?<br>(Update from previous san<br>day.)  | npling       | _           |            | namporten          |             |            |
| 12. | Is sample in cooler with frozen gel packs?  |              |             |            |                    |             |            |
| 13. | Number of clods taken>  | ·            | <del></del> |            | Manage qualiformie |             |            |
| 14. | Is each clod labeled?<br>(Masking tape at top of ha   | airnet.)     |             |            |                    |             | ******     |
| 15. | Is clod information on 2" x 2" label (inside of lid of clod box)?   |              | _           |            |                    | _           |            |
| 16. | Is clod information on outside of white quart containers (if used in place of clod box)?  | <del></del>  |             | *******    |                    | ,           |            |
| 17. | ** Are sample and pedon<br>number recorded on hand-<br>written cooler-contents<br>list? (Tape list to<br>inside of cooler before<br>shipping to Cornell.) | <del>-</del> | _           |            |                    | _           |            |
| 18. | Has temperature been take in cooler or cold storage compartment toda (Record in green notebook  |              |             |            | especialistica     |             |            |

\*\* Please make handwritten list of samples in each cooler and tape to inside lid before shipping to Cornell. Each list should be signed by the crew member loading the coolers. List need only be the Pedon No. plus all horizon numbers in the cooler, i.e.,

R11-NY071 -005-01
" " "-02
R12 " " -03
R22 " " -03
R11 -NY071 -006-02
FD0-NY071 -006-02

Total number of samples = 6 John Doe 8-26-85